

# *The Lion of Judah*

*King of Kings and Lord of Lords*

*The Titles, Reign, Life, Death, Resurrection, and  
Spirit of Jesus*

*Bible Studies on Jesus*

*Geoff Waugh*

© **Geoff Waugh, 2015, 2017**

*Most Scripture quotations are from the New Revised Standard Version Bible, copyright © 1989 the Division of Christian Education of the National Council of the Churches of Christ in the United States of America. Used by permission. All rights reserved.*

*Some Scripture quotations are from the New International Version® Anglicized, NIV® Copyright © 1979, 1984, 2011. Used by permission. All rights reserved worldwide. These are identified with (NIV).*

*Some Scripture quotations are taken from the New King James Version®. Copyright © 1982 by Thomas Nelson, Inc. Used by permission. All rights reserved. These quotations are identified with (NKJV).*

*Occasionally headings and their cross-references from the New Revised Standard Version Bible are used. Similar headings with cross-references are in The Good News Bible. The Appendix lists other translations occasionally used.*

*Artwork by Rebecca Brogan from her series The Lion of Judah.*

*Thanks to John Oley, former Principal of Vose Seminary, Perth, Australia, for his comments and suggestions, enhancing the accuracy and depth of these books.*

Basic Edition: ISBN: 978-1495387258  
Gift Edition: ISBN: 978-1511798754 (colour)  
**Printed by CreateSpace, Charleston, SC, USA**

**Renewal Journal Publications**  
**www.renewaljournal.com**  
**Australia**



***Logo: lamp & parchment,  
basin & towel,  
in the light of the cross***

## **Contents**

<b><i>Introduction</i></b>	<b>7</b>
<b><i>1. The Titles of Jesus</i></b>	<b>9</b>
<b><i>2. The Reign of Jesus</i></b>	<b>45</b>
<b><i>3. The Life of Jesus</i></b>	<b>83</b>
<b><i>4. The Death of Jesus</i></b>	<b>135</b>
<b><i>5. The Resurrection of Jesus</i></b>	<b>171</b>
<b><i>6. The Spirit of Jesus</i></b>	<b>205</b>
<b><i>Conclusion: The Lion of Judah</i></b>	<b>233</b>
<b><i>Appendix 1: Aslan – the Lion of Judah</i></b>	<b>237</b>
<b><i>Appendix 2: China Miracle</i></b>	<b>243</b>
<b><i>Appendix 3: Resources</i></b>	<b>247</b>

## ***Contents in Detail***

<b><i>Introduction</i></b>	7
<b><i>1. The Titles of Jesus</i></b>	9
Lion of Judah	10
Jesus/Joshua	10
Son of Man	14
Son of God	17
Son / Father's Son	20
Son of David	22
Lord	23
Lord Jesus	25
Lord Jesus Christ	27
Messiah / Christ	28
Master	31
The Word	32
Word of God	32
King of Kings and Lord of Lords	32
King	32
King of the Jews	34
King of Israel	34
Saviour	35
Saviour of the World	35
Lamb of God	35
The Lamb	36
Rabbi / Teacher	47
Leader / Prince	38
Righteous One	38
Holy One	38
True One	39
Faithful and True	39
The Amen	39
The Branch	39
Root of David	40
Servant	40
Cornerstone	40
The Name	41
The Almighty	41
Immanuel / Emmanuel	41
Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace	41

<b>I am</b>	42
The Bread of life, living bread	42
The Light of the world	42
The Door/Gate	42
The Good shepherd	42
The Resurrection, the life	42
The way, the truth, the life	42
The True vine	42
The Alpha and the Omega	43
The first and the last	43
The beginning and the end	43
The root and the descendant of David	43
The bright morning star	43
<b>2. <i>The Reign of Jesus</i></b>	45
The Lion of Judah in Scripture	46
Jesus declared that he fulfilled Scripture	47
Matthew declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture	48
Mark declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture	52
Luke declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture	54
John declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture	58
The church declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture	61
Old Testament Prophecies fulfilled in Jesus	65
Psalms	65
Prophets	72
Isaiah's 'Servant Songs'	73
Other Prophets	76
Summary	77
Prophecies Jesus Fulfilled	78
<b>3. <i>The Life of Jesus</i></b>	83
The Life of Jesus	84
The Birth and Boyhood of Jesus	85
The Beginning of Jesus' Ministry	88
Jesus' Ministry – Overview	90
Jesus' Ministry – Characteristics	95
Prayer	96
Crowds and Healing	99
Teaching	106
Parables	110
Disciples	113
Opposition	119
Map and Chronology	121

<b>4. <i>The Death of Jesus</i></b>	135
The Old Testament foretold Jesus' death	136
Jesus foretold his death	140
Holy Week	142
The Resurrection and Ascension	160
Reflections on Jesus' Death and Resurrection	161
New Testament	161
Other Sources	168
Story – The Tree	170
<b>5. <i>The Resurrection of Jesus</i></b>	171
The Kingdom of God	172
The Old Testament proclaims God's Kingdom	173
Jesus proclaimed his Resurrection and Reign	177
The Resurrection is God's Vindication of Jesus' Reign	181
The New Testament proclaims Jesus' Reign	185
The Resurrection and Ascension	194
<b>6. <i>The Spirit of Jesus</i></b>	205
God has given us the Spirit of His Son	206
The Spirit of the Lord in the Old Testament	210
The Spirit of the Lord in Jesus	214
The Spirit of the Lord in Us	218
Testimonies	225
Summary	231
<b><i>Conclusion: The Lion of Judah</i></b>	233
<b><i>Appendix 1: Aslan – the Lion of Judah</i></b>	237
<b><i>Appendix 2: China Miracle</i></b>	243
<b><i>Appendix 3: Resources</i></b>	247

## ***Introduction***

This book is compiled from the series of six devotional books into one volume, ***The Lion of Judah***. Each previous book is a chapter here. These books (and chapters) are:

- 1. The Titles of Jesus***
- 2. The Reign of Jesus***
- 3. The Life of Jesus***
- 4. The Death of Jesus***
- 5. The Resurrection of Jesus***
- 6. The Spirit of Jesus***
- 7. The Lion of Judah***

***1 The Titles of Jesus***, examines titles in the Bible used for Jesus, the Lion of the tribe of Judah (Revelation 5:5).

***2 The Reign of Jesus***, explores Bible prophecies about Jesus and how he fulfilled them as both Lion and Lamb. Matthew particularly emphasises how Jesus fulfilled prophecy.

***3 The Life of Jesus***, a brief summary, covers his three years of ministry in outline. Mark, the shortest Gospel, provides a useful summary.

***4 The Death of Jesus***, including that momentous final week in Jerusalem, examines this greatest theme of the Bible. Luke gives us unique insights including Jesus talking about this with Moses and Elijah.

***5 The Resurrection of Jesus***, transcending death, looks at the eternal life and victory Jesus won for us by his love. John discusses this in all his books.

***6 The Spirit of Jesus***, surveys the breath-taking scope of that victory. The book of The Acts traces some beginnings of those victories.

***7 The Lion of Judah***, *this book*, compiles all the previous books into one book. It shortens many Bible passages quoted at length in the previous books, adds bold emphasis to many passages, and condenses Introductory and Concluding information from each previous book.

I am grateful to Rebecca Brogan from Tasmania, Australia, for permission to use her vivid drawings from her series, *The Lion of Judah*, both as covers for each book and as chapter illustrations in this book.

## ***The Lion of Judah***

The Lion of Judah is one of the titles for Jesus, adapted from Revelation 5:5 – *Then one of the elders said to me, ‘Do not weep. See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals.’*

Judah’s father Jacob called him a young lion and prophesied that ‘the sceptre shall not depart from Judah until Shiloh comes’ (Genesis 49:9-10 NKJV), or ‘until he comes to whom it belongs’ (RSV, NIV), or ‘until tribute comes to him’ (NRSV, ESV). Revelation 5:5 declares that the Lion of the tribe of Judah has triumphed, announcing that Jesus, the sacrificial Lamb is also the conquering Lion.

The name Joshua/Jesus means God saves, or God is salvation. That is why the angel announcing his birth said, “... you are to name him Joshua/Jesus (Yeshua), for he will save his people from their sins” (Matthew 1:21). It is the same name as Moses’ general, Joshua, who led the Israelites into their promised land.

The Greek word Ἰησοῦς (*Iesous*, Yeshua) is translated mostly as *Jesus*, but also as *Joshua*. English translations of the New Testament traditionally use ‘Jesus’ when the reference is to Yeshua of Nazareth and commonly ‘Joshua’ for anyone else. Yeshua is translated ‘Joshua’ in these verses in modern versions:

Luke 3:29 – the son of Joshua (Jose in KJV)

Acts 7:45 – Our ancestors in turn brought it in with Joshua when they dispossessed the nations that God drove out before our ancestors.

Hebrews 4:8 – For if Joshua had given them rest, God would not speak later about another day.

So in English the name Jesus became unique and sacred for Jesus of Nazareth, the Son of God, the Saviour of the world.

This book uses the familiar name Jesus, with occasional reminders that ‘Jesus of Nazareth’ was known to everyone as ‘Joshua/Yeshua of Nazareth’ – meaning ‘God saves’ or ‘God is salvation’.

Most Bible references in this book are in normal type with key phrases highlighted in bold. Additional comment is usually in *italics*.



*Chapter 1*  
*The Titles of Jesus*



*Roar*

## **Lion of Judah**

*The Lion of Judah, a title adapted from Revelation 5:5, is one of the titles for Jesus. The verses in this book cover his many titles. The name Jesus is from the Greek translation of the Hebrew name Joshua (Yeshua). See [www.biblegateway.com](http://www.biblegateway.com) for more references using these titles.*

Then one of the elders said to me, 'Do not weep. See, **the Lion of the tribe of Judah**, the Root of David, has conquered, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals.' (Revelation 5:5)

## **Jesus/Joshua (God saves)**

*Here are sample passages about Joshua/Jesus of Nazareth. You can respond to him as you read about him. He said, "I am with you always" (Matthew 28:20).*

She will bear a son, and you are to name him **Jesus**, for **he will save** his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21)

**Jesus** grew in wisdom and in stature and in favour with God and all the people. (Luke 2:52 NLT)

And when **Jesus** had been baptized, just as he came up from the water, suddenly the heavens were opened to him and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and alighting on him. (Matthew 3:16; see Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:21-22; John 1:32-34)

Then **Jesus**, filled with the power of the Spirit, returned to Galilee, and a report about him spread through all the surrounding country.<sup>15</sup> He began to teach in their synagogues and was praised by everyone. (Luke 4:14-15)

Now after John was arrested, **Jesus** came to Galilee, proclaiming the good news of God,<sup>15</sup> and saying, 'The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God has come near; repent, and believe in the good news.' (Mark 1:14-15; see Matthew 4:12; Luke 4:14-15)

Now when **Jesus** heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee.<sup>13</sup> He left Nazareth and made his home in Capernaum by the lake, in the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali, ...<sup>17</sup> From that time **Jesus** began to proclaim, 'Repent, for the kingdom of heaven has come near.' (Matthew 4:12-13, 17; see Isaiah 9:1-2)

**Jesus** went throughout Galilee, teaching in their synagogues and proclaiming the good news of the kingdom and curing every disease and every sickness among the people. (Matthew 4:23; 9:35)

When **Jesus** saw the crowds, he went up the mountain; and after he sat down, his disciples came to him.<sup>2</sup> Then he began to speak, and taught them ...<sup>28</sup> Now when **Jesus** had finished saying these things, the crowds were astounded at his teaching,<sup>29</sup> for he taught them as one having authority, and not as their scribes. (Matthew 5:1-2; 7:28-29)

Then **Jesus** called the twelve together and gave them power and authority over all demons and to cure diseases,<sup>2</sup> and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal. (Luke 9:1-2)

Once when **Jesus** was praying alone, with only the disciples near him, he asked them, 'Who do the crowds say that I am?'<sup>19</sup> They answered, 'John the Baptist; but others, Elijah; and still others, that one of the ancient prophets has arisen.'<sup>20</sup> He said to them, 'But who do you say that I am?' Peter answered, 'The **Messiah** of God.'<sup>21</sup> He sternly ordered and commanded them not to tell anyone,<sup>22</sup> saying, 'The **Son of Man** must undergo great suffering, and be rejected by the elders, chief priests, and scribes, and be killed, and on the third day be raised.' (Luke 9:18-22; see Matthew 16:13-19; Mark 8:27-29)

Now about eight days after these sayings **Jesus** took with him Peter and John and James, and went up on the mountain to pray.<sup>29</sup> And while he was praying, the appearance of his face changed, and his clothes became dazzling white.<sup>30</sup> Suddenly they saw two men, Moses and Elijah, talking to him.<sup>31</sup> They appeared in glory and were speaking of his departure, which he was about to accomplish at Jerusalem. (Luke 9:28-31; see Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8)

Then they brought the colt to **Jesus** and threw their cloaks on it; and he sat on it.<sup>8</sup> Many people spread their cloaks on the road, and others spread leafy branches that they had cut in the fields.<sup>9</sup> Then those who went ahead and those who followed were shouting, 'Hosanna!

Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!

<sup>10</sup> Blessed is the coming kingdom of our ancestor David!

Hosanna in the highest heaven!

(Mark 11:7-10; see Matthew 21:1-11; Luke 19:28-30; John 12:12-16)

Then **Jesus** entered the temple and drove out all who were selling and buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money-changers and the seats of those who sold doves. ...<sup>14</sup> The blind and the lame came to him in the temple, and he cured them. (Matthew:21:12, 14; see Mark 11:15-18; Luke 19:45-48; John 2:13-22)

While he was at Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he sat at the table, a woman came with an alabaster jar of very costly ointment of nard, and she broke open the jar and poured the ointment on his head. ...<sup>6</sup> But **Jesus** said, 'Let her alone; why do you trouble her? She has performed a good service for me.<sup>7</sup> For you always have the poor with you, and you can show kindness to them whenever you wish; but you will not always have me.<sup>8</sup> She has done what she could; she has anointed my body beforehand for its burial. (Mark 14:3-19; see Matthew 26:6-13; John 12:1-8)

On the first day of the Festival of Unleavened Bread, when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb, **Jesus'** disciples asked him, 'Where do you want us to go and make preparations for you to eat the Passover?'

<sup>22</sup> While they were eating, **Jesus** took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and gave it to his disciples, saying, 'Take it; this is my body.'

<sup>23</sup> Then he took a cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them, and they all drank from it.

## The Lion of Judah

<sup>24</sup> ‘This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many,’ he said to them.

<sup>25</sup> ‘Truly I tell you, I will not drink again from the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God.’

<sup>26</sup> When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

(Mark 14:12, 22-26 NIV; see Matthew 26:26-30; Luke 22:14-20;

1 Corinthians 11:23-25)

They went to a place called Gethsemane, and **Jesus** said to his disciples, ‘Sit here while I pray.’ <sup>33</sup> He took Peter, James and John along with him, and he began to be deeply distressed and troubled. <sup>34</sup> ‘My soul is overwhelmed with sorrow to the point of death,’ he said to them. ‘Stay here and keep watch.’

<sup>35</sup> Going a little farther, he fell to the ground and prayed that if possible the hour might pass from him. <sup>36</sup> ‘Abba, Father,’ he said, ‘everything is possible for you. Take this cup from me. Yet not what I will, but what you will.’

(Mark 14:32-36 NIV; Matthew 26:36-46; see Luke 22:39-46)

Then Pilate took **Jesus** and had him flogged. <sup>2</sup> And the soldiers wove a crown of thorns and put it on his head, and they dressed him in a purple robe. <sup>3</sup> They kept coming up to him, saying, ‘Hail, **King of the Jews!**’ and striking him on the face.

(John 19:1-3; see Mark 15:16-20; Matthew 27:27-31)

The soldiers led **Jesus** away into the palace (that is, the Praetorium) and called together the whole company of soldiers. <sup>17</sup> They put a purple robe on him, then twisted together a crown of thorns and set it on him. <sup>18</sup> And they began to call out to him, ‘Hail, **king of the Jews!**’ <sup>19</sup> Again and again they struck him on the head with a staff and spat on him. Falling on their knees, they paid homage to him. <sup>20</sup> And when they had mocked him, they took off the purple robe and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him out to crucify him.

(Mark 15:16-20 NIV; see Matthew 27:27-31; John 19:2-3)

Then they brought **Jesus** to the place called Golgotha (which means the place of a skull). <sup>23</sup> And they offered him wine mixed with myrrh; but he did not take it. <sup>24</sup> And they crucified him, and divided his clothes among them, casting lots to decide what each should take.

(Mark 15:22-24; see Matthew 27:32-44; Luke 23:26-43; John 19:17-27)

When **Jesus** had received the wine, he said, ‘It is finished.’ Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit. (John 19:30)

After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to look at the tomb.

<sup>2</sup> There was a violent earthquake, for an angel of the Lord came down from heaven and, going to the tomb, rolled back the stone and sat on it. <sup>3</sup> His appearance was like lightning, and his clothes were white as snow. <sup>4</sup> The guards were so afraid of him that they shook and became like dead men.

<sup>5</sup> The angel said to the women, ‘Do not be afraid, for I know that you are looking for **Jesus**, who was crucified. <sup>6</sup> He is not here; he has risen, just as he said. Come and see the place where he lay. <sup>7</sup> Then go quickly and tell his disciples: “He has risen from the dead and is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him.” Now I have told you.’ (Matthew 28:1-7 NIV; see Mark 16:1-10; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-10)

But Mary stood weeping outside the tomb. As she wept, she bent over to look into the tomb; <sup>12</sup>and she saw two angels in white, sitting where the body of Jesus had been lying, one at the head and the other at the feet. <sup>13</sup>They said to her, 'Woman, why are you weeping?' She said to them, 'They have taken away my **Lord**, and I do not know where they have laid him.' <sup>14</sup>When she had said this, she turned round and saw **Jesus** standing there, but she did not know that it was **Jesus**. <sup>15</sup>**Jesus** said to her, 'Woman, why are you weeping? For whom are you looking?' Supposing him to be the gardener, she said to him, 'Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away.' <sup>16</sup>**Jesus** said to her, 'Mary!' (John 20:11-16)

*When **Jesus** rose early on the first day of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had driven seven demons. <sup>10</sup>She went and told those who had been with him and who were mourning and weeping. <sup>11</sup>When they heard that **Jesus** was alive and that she had seen him, they did not believe it.*

*<sup>12</sup>Afterwards **Jesus** appeared in a different form to two of them while they were walking in the country. <sup>13</sup>These returned and reported it to the rest; but they did not believe them either.*

*<sup>14</sup>Later **Jesus** appeared to the Eleven as they were eating; he rebuked them for their lack of faith and their stubborn refusal to believe those who had seen him after he had risen.*

*<sup>15</sup>He said to them, 'Go into all the world and preach the gospel to all creation. (Mark 16:9-15 NIV; see Matthew 28:9-10; John 20:11-18)*

**Jesus** came and said to them, 'All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. <sup>19</sup>Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup>and teaching them to obey everything that I have commanded you. And remember, I am with you always, to the end of the age.' (Matthew 28:18-20)

So when they had come together, they asked him, '**Lord**, is this the time when you will restore the kingdom to Israel?' <sup>7</sup>He replied, 'It is not for you to know the times or periods that the Father has set by his own authority. <sup>8</sup>But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.' <sup>9</sup>When he had said this, as they were watching, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight. <sup>10</sup>While he was going and they were gazing up towards heaven, suddenly two men in white robes stood by them. <sup>11</sup>They said, 'Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking up towards heaven? This **Jesus**, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven.' (Acts 1:6-11)

I, John, your brother who share with you in **Jesus** the persecution and the kingdom and the patient endurance, was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of **Jesus**. (Revelation 1:9)

'It is I, **Jesus**, who sent my angel to you with this testimony for the churches. I am the root and the **descendant of David, the bright morning star.**' (Revelation 22:16)

## ***Son of Man***

"I was watching in the night visions,  
And behold, *One* like the **Son of Man**,  
Coming with the clouds of heaven!  
He came to the Ancient of Days,  
And they brought Him near before Him.  
<sup>14</sup> Then to Him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom,  
That all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him.  
His dominion *is* an everlasting dominion,  
Which shall not pass away,  
And His kingdom *the one*  
Which shall not be destroyed. (Daniel 7:13-14)

But so that you may know that the **Son of Man** has authority on earth to forgive sins'—  
he then said to the paralytic—'Stand up, take your bed and go to your home.' (Matthew  
9:6; Mark 2:10; Luke 5:24)

the **Son of Man** came eating and drinking, and they say, "Look, a glutton and a drunkard,  
a friend of tax-collectors and sinners!"  
(Matthew 11:19; see Luke 7:34)

For the **Son of Man** is **Lord** of the Sabbath.  
(Matthew 12:8 NIV; see Mark 2:28; Luke 6:5)

Whoever speaks a word against the **Son of Man** will be forgiven, but whoever speaks  
against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven, either in this age or in the age to come.  
(Matthew 12:32; see Luke 12:10)

For the **Son of Man** is to come with his angels in the glory of his Father, and then he  
will repay everyone for what has been done. Truly I tell you, there are some standing  
here who will not taste death before they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom.  
(Matthew 16:27-28)

As they were coming down the mountain, **Jesus** ordered them, "Tell no one about the  
vision until after the **Son of Man** has been raised from the dead." (Matthew 17:9; see  
Mark 9:9)

I tell you that Elijah has already come, and they did not recognize him, but they did to  
him whatever they pleased. So also the **Son of Man** is about to suffer at their hands.  
(Matthew 17:12; see Mark 9:12)

'See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the **Son of Man** will be handed over to the chief  
priests and scribes, and they will condemn him to death; <sup>19</sup> then they will hand him  
over to the Gentiles to be mocked and flogged and crucified; and on the third day he  
will be raised.' (Matthew 20:18-19; Mark 8:31; Luke 9:22)  
Then the sign of the **Son of Man** will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the  
earth will mourn, and they will see "the **Son of Man** coming on the clouds of heaven"  
with power and great glory.  
(Matthew 24:30; see Mark 13:26; Luke 21:27; Daniel 7:13-14)

'When the **Son of Man** comes in his glory, and all the angels with him, then he will sit on the throne of his glory. (Matthew 25:31)

Then he came to the disciples and said to them, 'Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? See, the hour is at hand, and the **Son of Man** is betrayed into the hands of sinners.' (Matthew 26:45; see Mark 14:41)

But **Jesus** was silent. Then the high priest said to him, 'I put you under oath before the living God, tell us if you are the **Messiah**, the **Son of God**.' <sup>64</sup> **Jesus** said to him, 'You have said so. But I tell you,

From now on you will see the **Son of Man**

seated at the right hand of Power

and coming on the clouds of heaven.'

(Matthew 26:63-64; see Mark 14:62; Luke 22:69)

Those who are ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, of them the **Son of Man** will also be ashamed when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.'

(Mark 8:38; see Matthew 10:33; Luke 9:26)

For the **Son of Man** came not to be served but to serve, and to give his life a ransom for many.' (Mark 10:45)

And **Jesus** said to him, 'Foxes have holes, and birds of the air have nests; but the **Son of Man** has nowhere to lay his head.' (Luke 9:58)

And I tell you, everyone who acknowledges me before others, the **Son of Man** also will acknowledge before the angels of God

(Luke 12:8; see Matthew 10:32)

You also must be ready, for the **Son of Man** is coming at an unexpected hour.' (Luke 12:40)

Then he took the twelve aside and said to them, 'See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and everything that is written about the **Son of Man** by the prophets will be accomplished. (Luke 18:31)

For the **Son of Man** came to seek out and to save the lost.'

(Luke 19:10; see Matthew 18:11)

And he said to him, 'Very truly, I tell you, you will see heaven opened and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the **Son of Man**.' (John 1:51)

No one has ascended into heaven except the one who descended from heaven, the **Son of Man**. <sup>14</sup> And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the **Son of Man** be lifted up, <sup>15</sup> that whoever believes in him may have eternal life. (John 3:13-15)

For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has granted **the Son** also to have life in himself; <sup>27</sup> and he has given him authority to execute judgement, because he is the **Son of Man**. (John 5:26-27)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Do not work for the food that perishes, but for the food that endures for eternal life, which the **Son of Man** will give you. For it is on him that God the Father has set his seal.' (John 6:27)

So **Jesus** said to them, 'Very truly, I tell you, unless you eat the flesh of the **Son of Man** and drink his blood, you have no life in you. (John 6:53)

Then what if you were to see the **Son of Man** ascending to where he was before? (John 6:62)

So **Jesus** said, 'When you have lifted up the **Son of Man**, then you will realize that I am he, and that I do nothing on my own, but I speak these things as the Father instructed me. (John 8:28)

Jesus answered them, 'The hour has come for the **Son of Man** to be glorified. (John 12:23)

The crowd answered him, 'We have heard from the law that the **Messiah** remains for ever. How can you say that the **Son of Man** must be lifted up? Who is this **Son of Man**?' (John 12:34)

**Jesus** said, 'Now the **Son of Man** has been glorified, and God has been glorified in him. (John 13:31)

'Look,' he said, 'I see the heavens opened and the **Son of Man** standing at the right hand of God!' (Acts 7:56)

Then I turned to see whose voice it was that spoke to me, and on turning I saw seven golden lampstands, <sup>13</sup>and in the midst of the lampstands I saw one like the **Son of Man**, clothed with a long robe and with a golden sash across his chest. ... Then I looked, and there was a white cloud, and seated on the cloud was one like the **Son of Man**, with a golden crown on his head, and a sharp sickle in his hand! (Revelation 1:12-13; 14:14)



## ***Son of God***

The tempter came and said to him, 'If you are the **Son of God**, command these stones to become loaves of bread.' ... 'If you are the **Son of God**, throw yourself down (Matthew 4:3, 6; see Luke 4:3, 9)

Suddenly they shouted, 'What have you to do with us, **Son of God**? Have you come here to torment us before the time?' (Matthew 8:29)

And those in the boat worshipped him, saying, 'Truly you are the **Son of God**.' (Matthew 14:33)

But **Jesus** was silent. Then the high priest said to him, 'I put you under oath before the living God, tell us if you are the **Messiah**, the **Son of God**.'<sup>64</sup> **Jesus** said to him, 'You have said so. But I tell you,

From now on you will see the **Son of Man**

seated at the right hand of Power

and coming on the clouds of heaven.'

(Matthew 26:63-64; see Mark 14:61-62; Luke 22:70; Daniel 7:13-14)

If you are the **Son of God**, come down from the cross. (Matthew 27:40)

Now when the centurion and those with him, who were keeping watch over Jesus, saw the earthquake and what took place, they were terrified and said, 'Truly this man was **God's Son**!'

(Matthew 27:54; see Mark 15:38; Luke 23:47;

The beginning of the good news of **Jesus Christ, the Son of God**.

(Mark 1:1)

Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and shouted, 'You are the **Son of God**!' (Mark 3:11)

The angel said to her, 'The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore the child to be born will be holy; he will be called **Son of God**.' (Luke 1:35)

**Jesus** was about thirty years old when he began his work. He was the son (as was thought) of Joseph ... son of Enos, son of Seth, son of Adam, **son of God**. (Luke 3:23, 38)

Demons also came out of many, shouting, 'You are the **Son of God**!' But he rebuked them and would not allow them to speak, because they knew that he was the **Messiah**. (Luke 4:41)

All of them asked, 'Are you, then, the **Son of God**?' He said to them, 'You say that I am.' (Luke 22:70)

I myself have seen and have testified that this is the **Son of God**.'

(John 1:34)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Nathanael replied, 'Rabbi, you are the **Son of God!** You are the **King of Israel!**' (John 1:49)

Those who believe in him are not condemned; but those who do not believe are condemned already, because they have not believed in the name of the only **Son of God.** (John 3:18)

'Very truly, I tell you, the hour is coming, and is now here, when the dead will hear the voice of the **Son of God,** and those who hear will live. (John 5:25)

But when **Jesus** heard it, he said, 'This illness does not lead to death; rather it is for God's glory, so that the **Son of God** may be glorified through it.' (John 11:14)

She said to him, 'Yes, **Lord,** I believe that you are the **Messiah, the Son of God,** the one coming into the world.' (John 11:27)

The Jews answered him, 'We have a law, and according to that law he ought to die because he has claimed to be the **Son of God.**' (John 19:7)

But these are written so that you may come to believe that Jesus is the **Messiah, the Son of God,** and that through believing you may have life in his name (John 20:31)

he began to proclaim **Jesus** in the synagogues, saying, 'He is the **Son of God.**' (Acts 19:20)

the gospel concerning **his Son,** who was descended from David according to the flesh <sup>4</sup> and was declared to be **Son of God** with power according to the spirit of holiness by resurrection from the dead, **Jesus Christ our Lord ...** (Romans 1:3-4)

For the **Son of God, Jesus Christ,** whom we proclaimed among you, ... was not 'Yes and No'; but in him it is always 'Yes.' (2 Corinthians 1:19)

it is no longer I who live, but it is **Christ** who lives in me. And the life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the **Son of God,** who loved me and gave himself for me. (Galatians 2:20)

The gifts he gave were that some would be apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, some pastors and teachers, <sup>12</sup> to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of **Christ,** <sup>13</sup> until all of us come to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the **Son of God,** to maturity, to the measure of the full stature of **Christ.** (Ephesians 4:11-13)

Since, then, we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, **Jesus, the Son of God,** let us hold fast to our confession. (Hebrews 4:14)

they are crucifying again the **Son of God** and are holding him up to contempt. (Hebrews 6:6)

How much worse punishment do you think will be deserved by those who have spurned the **Son of God**, profaned the blood of the covenant by which they were sanctified, and outraged the Spirit of grace?  
(Hebrews 10:29)

The **Son of God** was revealed for this purpose, to destroy the works of the devil. (1 John 3:8)

God abides in those who confess that **Jesus is the Son of God**, and they abide in God. (1 John 4:15)

Who is it that conquers the world but the one who believes that **Jesus is the Son of God**? (1 John 5:5)

Those who believe in the **Son of God** have the testimony in their hearts.  
(1 John 5:10)

Whoever has **the Son** has life; whoever does not have the **Son of God** does not have life.  
(1 John 5:12)

I write these things to you who believe in the name of the **Son of God**, so that you may know that you have eternal life. (1 John 5:13)

And we know that the **Son of God** has come and has given us understanding so that we may know him who is true; and we are in him who is true, in **his Son Jesus Christ**. He is the true God and eternal life.  
(1 John 5:20)

These are the words of the **Son of God**, who has eyes like a flame of fire, and whose feet are like burnished bronze (Revelation 2:18)

## ***Son / Father's Son***

And a voice from heaven said, 'This is **my Son, the Beloved**, with whom I am well pleased.' (Matthew 3:17; see Mark 1:11; Luke 3:22)

While he was still speaking, suddenly a bright cloud overshadowed them, and from the cloud a voice said, 'This is **my Son, the Beloved**; with him I am well pleased; listen to him!'

(Matthew 17:5; see Mark 9:7; Luke 9:35)

All things have been handed over to me by my Father; and no one knows who **the Son** is except the Father, or who the Father is except **the Son** and anyone to whom **the Son** chooses to reveal him.'

(Luke 10:22; see Matthew 11:27)

But about that day and hour no one knows, neither the angels of heaven, nor **the Son**, but only the Father. (Matthew 24:36; see Mark 13:32)

Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of **the Son** and of the Holy Spirit (Matthew 28:19)

And **the Word** became flesh and lived among us, and we have seen his glory, the glory as of a father's only **son**, full of grace and truth.

(John 1:14)

No one has ever seen God. It is **God the only Son**, who is close to the Father's heart, who has made him known. (John 1:18)

The Father loves **the Son** and has placed all things in his hands.  
(John 3:35)

**Jesus** said to them, 'Very truly, I tell you, **the Son** can do nothing on his own, but only what he sees the Father doing; for whatever the Father does, **the Son** does likewise. <sup>20</sup>The Father loves **the Son** and shows him all that he himself is doing; and he will show him greater works than these, so that you will be astonished. <sup>21</sup>Indeed, just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also **the Son** gives life to whomsoever he wishes. <sup>22</sup>The Father judges no one but has given all judgement to **the Son**, <sup>23</sup>so that all may honour **the Son** just as they honour the Father. Anyone who does not honour **the Son** does not honour the Father who sent him. <sup>26</sup>For just as the Father has life in himself, so he has granted **the Son** also to have life in himself (John 5:19-23, 26)

This is indeed the will of my Father, that all who see the Son and believe in him may have eternal life; and I will raise them up on the last day. (John 6:40)

Jesus answered, 'Is it not written in your law, "I said, you are gods"? <sup>35</sup>If those to whom the word of God came were called "gods"—and the scripture cannot be annulled—<sup>36</sup>can you say that the one whom the Father has sanctified and sent into the world is blaspheming because I said, "I am **God's Son**"?

(John 10:34-36; see Psalm 82:6)

I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Father may be glorified in **the Son**.  
(John 14:13)

After Jesus had spoken these words, he looked up to heaven and said, 'Father, the hour has come; glorify **your Son** so that **the Son** may glorify you,  
(John 17:1)

And because you are children, God has sent the Spirit of **his Son** into our hearts, crying, 'Abba! Father!' (Galatians 4:6)

For to which of the angels did God ever say, 'You are **my Son**; today I have begotten you'? Or again, 'I will be his Father, and he will be **my Son**'?  
(Hebrews 1:5)

For he received honour and glory from God the Father when that voice was conveyed to him by the Majestic Glory, saying, 'This is **my Son, my Beloved**, with whom I am well pleased.'  
(2 Peter 1:17; see Matthew 3:17; 17:5)

our fellowship is with the Father and with **his Son Jesus Christ** (1 John 1:3)

Who is the liar but the one who denies that **Jesus is the Christ**? This is the antichrist, the one who denies the Father and **the Son**.<sup>23</sup> No one who denies **the Son** has the Father; everyone who confesses **the Son** has the Father also.<sup>24</sup> Let what you heard from the beginning abide in you. If what you heard from the beginning abides in you, then you will abide in **the Son** and in the Father. (1 John 2:22-24)

And we have seen and do testify that the Father has sent **his Son** as **the Saviour** of the world. (1 John 4:14)

Whoever has **the Son** has life; whoever does not have **the Son of God** does not have life.  
(1 John 5:12)

Grace, mercy, and peace will be with us from God the Father and from **Jesus Christ, the Father's Son**, in truth and love. (2 John 1:3)

Everyone who does not abide in the teaching of **Christ**, but goes beyond it, does not have God; whoever abides in the teaching has both the Father and **the Son**. (2 John 1:9)

## ***Son of David***

An account of the genealogy of **Jesus the Messiah, the son of David**, the son of Abraham. (Matthew 1:1)

As **Jesus** went on from there, two blind men followed him, crying loudly, "Have mercy on us, **Son of David!**" (Matthew 9:27)

All the crowds were amazed and said, "Can this be the **Son of David?**" (Matthew 12:23)

Just then a Canaanite woman from that region came out and started shouting, "Have mercy on me, **Lord, Son of David**; my daughter is tormented by a demon." (Matthew 15:22)

There were two blind men sitting by the roadside. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they shouted, "Lord, have mercy on us, **Son of David!**"<sup>31</sup> The crowd sternly ordered them to be quiet; but they shouted even more loudly, "Have mercy on us, **Lord, Son of David!**" (Matthew 20:30-31; see Mark 10:47-48; Luke 18:35-43)

The crowds that went ahead of him and that followed were shouting, "Hosanna to the **Son of David!** Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest heaven!" (Matthew 21:9)

But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the amazing things that he did, and heard the children crying out in the temple, "Hosanna to the **Son of David,**" they became angry (Matthew 21:15)

'What do you think of the **Messiah?** Whose son is he?' They said to him, "The **son of David.**"<sup>43</sup> He said to them, 'How is it then that David by the Spirit calls him **Lord,** saying,

<sup>44</sup> "The Lord said to my Lord,

'Sit at my right hand,

until I put your enemies under your feet"?

(Matthew 22:42-44; see Mark 12:35-37; Luke 20:41-44; Psalm 110:1)

## **Lord**

“Prepare the way of **the Lord**, make his paths straight.”  
(Matthew 3:3; see Mark 1:3; Luke 3:4; John 1:23; Isaiah 40:3)

‘Not everyone who says to me, “**Lord, Lord**”, will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only one who does the will of my Father in heaven. <sup>22</sup> On that day many will say to me, “**Lord, Lord**, did we not prophesy in your name, and cast out demons in your name, and do many deeds of power in your name?” (Matthew 7:21-22)

‘**Lord**, if you choose, you can make me clean.’  
(Matthew 8:2; see Mark 1:40; Luke 5:12)

The centurion answered, ‘**Lord**, I am not worthy to have you come under my roof; but only speak the word, and my servant will be healed. (Matthew 8:8; see Luke 7:6)

Another of his disciples said to him, ‘**Lord**, first let me go and bury my father.’ (Luke 9:57-62; see Matthew 8:18-22)

And they went and woke him up, saying, ‘**Lord**, save us! We are perishing!’ (Matthew 8:25; see Mark 4:38; Luke 8:24)

When he entered the house, the blind men came to him; and **Jesus** said to them, ‘Do you believe that I am able to do this?’ They said to him, ‘Yes, **Lord**.’ (Matthew 9:28)

Then he said to his disciples, ‘The harvest is plentiful, but the labourers are few; <sup>38</sup> therefore ask the **Lord** of the harvest to send out labourers into his harvest.’ (Matthew 9:37-38)

For the **Son of Man** is **Lord of the Sabbath**.’  
(Matthew 12:8 NIV; see Mark 2:28; Luke 6:5)

Peter answered him, ‘**Lord**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water.’<sup>29</sup> He said, ‘Come.’ So Peter got out of the boat, started walking on the water, and came towards **Jesus**.<sup>30</sup> But when he noticed the strong wind, he became frightened, and beginning to sink, he cried out, ‘**Lord**, save me!’ (Matthew 14:28-30)

Just then a Canaanite woman from that region came out and started shouting, ‘Have mercy on me, **Lord, Son of David**; my daughter is tormented by a demon.’ ...<sup>25</sup> But she came and knelt before him, saying, ‘Lord, help me.’ ...

<sup>27</sup> She said, ‘Yes, **Lord**, yet even the dogs eat the crumbs that fall from their masters’ table.’ (Matthew 15:22, 25, 27; see Mark 7:24-30)

And Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him, saying, ‘God forbid it, **Lord**! This must never happen to you.’ (Matthew 16:22; see Mark 8:32)

Then Peter said to Jesus, ‘**Lord**, it is good for us to be here; if you wish, I will make three dwellings here, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.’  
(Matthew 17:4; see Mark 9:5; Luke 9:33)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Then Peter came and said to him, '**Lord**, if another member of the church sins against me, how often should I forgive? ...' (Matthew 18:21)

There were two blind men sitting by the roadside. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they shouted, '**Lord**, have mercy on us, **Son of David!**' <sup>31</sup>The crowd sternly ordered them to be quiet; but they shouted even more loudly, 'Have mercy on us, **Lord**, **Son of David!**' <sup>32</sup>**Jesus** stood still and called them, saying, 'What do you want me to do for you?' <sup>33</sup>They said to him, '**Lord**, let our eyes be opened.' <sup>34</sup>Moved with compassion, **Jesus** touched their eyes. Immediately they regained their sight and followed him. (Matthew 20:30-34; see Mark 10:46-52; Luke 18:35-43)

After this the **Lord** appointed seventy others and sent them on ahead of him in pairs to every town and place where he himself intended to go. <sup>2</sup>He said to them, 'The harvest is plentiful, but the labourers are few; therefore ask the **Lord** of the harvest to send out labourers into his harvest. (Luke 10:1-2)

If anyone says anything to you, just say this, "The **Lord** needs them." And he will send them immediately.' (Matthew 21:3; see Mark 11:3; Luke 19:31)

'What do you think of the **Messiah?** Whose son is he?' They said to him, 'The **son of David.**' <sup>43</sup>He said to them, 'How is it then that David by the Spirit calls him **Lord**, saying,

<sup>44</sup>"The Lord said to my Lord,

'Sit at my right hand,

until I put your enemies under your feet"?)

(Matthew 22:42-44; Mark 12:35-37; Luke 20:41-44; Psalm 110:1)

Then the righteous will answer him, "**Lord**, when was it that we saw you hungry and gave you food, or thirsty and gave you something to drink? <sup>44</sup>Then they also will answer, "**Lord**, when was it that we saw you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not take care of you?" (Matthew 25:37, 44)

Keep awake therefore, for you do not know on what day your **Lord** is coming. (Matthew 24:42)

In your relationships with one another, have the same mindset as **Christ Jesus:**

<sup>6</sup>Who, being in very nature God,

did not consider equality with God something to be used to his own advantage;

<sup>7</sup>rather, he made himself nothing

by taking the very nature of a servant,

being made in human likeness.

<sup>8</sup>And being found in appearance as a man,

he humbled himself

by becoming obedient to death—

even death on a cross!

<sup>9</sup>Therefore God exalted him to the highest place

and gave him the name that is above every name,

<sup>10</sup>that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow,

in heaven and on earth and under the earth,

<sup>11</sup>and every tongue acknowledge that **Jesus Christ is Lord**,

to the glory of God the Father. (Philippians 2:11)



## ***Lord Jesus***

So then the **Lord Jesus**, after he had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God. (Mark 16:19)

So one of the men who have accompanied us throughout the time that the **Lord Jesus** went in and out among us, <sup>22</sup>beginning from the baptism of John until the day when he was taken up from us—one of these must become a witness with us to his resurrection.’ (Acts 1:21-22)

With great power the apostles gave their testimony to the resurrection of the **Lord Jesus**, and great grace was upon them all. (Acts 4:33)

While they were stoning Stephen, he prayed, ‘**Lord Jesus**, receive my spirit.’ (Acts 7:59)

(for as yet the Spirit had not come upon any of them; they had only been baptized in the name of the **Lord Jesus**). (Acts 8:16)

So Ananias went and entered the house. He laid his hands on Saul and said, ‘Brother Saul, the **Lord Jesus**, who appeared to you on your way here, has sent me so that you may regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.’ (Acts 9:17)

But among them were some men of Cyprus and Cyrene who, on coming to Antioch, spoke to the Hellenists also, proclaiming the **Lord Jesus**. (Acts 11:20)

On the contrary, we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the **Lord Jesus**, just as they will.’ (Acts 15:11)

They answered, ‘Believe on the **Lord Jesus**, and you will be saved, you and your household.’ (Acts 16:31)

On hearing this, they were baptized in the name of the **Lord Jesus**. (Acts 19:5)

When this became known to all residents of Ephesus, both Jews and Greeks, everyone was awestruck; and the name of the **Lord Jesus** was praised. (Acts 19:7)

I testified to both Jews and Greeks about repentance towards God and faith towards our **Lord Jesus**. (Acts 20:21)

I do not count my life of any value to myself, if only I may finish my course and the ministry that I received from the **Lord Jesus**, to testify to the good news of God’s grace. (Acts 20:24)

In all this I have given you an example that by such work we must support the weak, remembering the words of the **Lord Jesus**, for he himself said, “It is more blessed to give than to receive.” (Acts 20:35)

## *The Lion of Judah*

I am ready not only to be bound but even to die in Jerusalem for the name of the **Lord Jesus.**' (Acts 21:13)

I know and am persuaded in the **Lord Jesus** that nothing is unclean in itself; but it is unclean for anyone who thinks it unclean. (Romans 14:14)

For I received from the Lord what I also handed on to you, that the **Lord Jesus** on the night when he was betrayed took a loaf of bread, <sup>24</sup>and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, 'This is my body that is for<sup>[a]</sup> you. Do this in remembrance of me.' (1 Corinthians 11:23-24)

The grace of the **Lord Jesus** be with you. (1 Corinthians 16:23)

on the day of the **Lord Jesus** we are your boast even as you are our boast. (2 Corinthians 1:14)

we know that the one who raised the **Lord Jesus** will raise us also with Jesus, and will bring us with you into his presence. (2 Corinthians 4:14)

The God and Father of the **Lord Jesus** (blessed be he for ever!) knows that I do not lie. (2 Corinthians 11:31)

I have heard of your faith in the **Lord Jesus** and your love towards all the saints (Ephesians 1:15)

I hope in the **Lord Jesus** to send Timothy to you soon, so that I may be cheered by news of you. (Philippians 2:19)

And whatever you do, in word or deed, do everything in the name of the **Lord Jesus**, giving thanks to God the Father through him. (Galatians 3:17)

For what is our hope or joy or crown of boasting before our **Lord Jesus** at his coming? Is it not you? (1 Thessalonians 2:19)

Now may our God and Father himself and our **Lord Jesus** direct our way to you. (1 Thessalonians 3:11)

And may he so strengthen your hearts in holiness that you may be blameless before our God and Father at the coming of our **Lord Jesus** with all his saints. (1 Thessalonians 3:13)

Finally, brothers and sisters, we ask and urge you in the **Lord Jesus** that, as you learned from us how you ought to live and to please God (as, in fact, you are doing), you should do so more and more. <sup>2</sup>For you know what instructions we gave you through the Lord Jesus. (1 Thessalonians 4:1)

For it is indeed just of God to repay with affliction those who afflict you, <sup>7</sup>and to give relief to the afflicted as well as to us, when the **Lord Jesus** is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels <sup>8</sup>in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. (2 Thessalonians 1:6-8)

To this end we always pray for you, asking that our God will make you worthy of his call and will fulfil by his power every good resolve and work of faith,<sup>12</sup> so that the name of our **Lord Jesus** may be glorified in you, and you in him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ. (2 Thessalonians 1:11-12)

And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the **Lord Jesus** will destroy with the breath of his mouth, annihilating him by the manifestation of his coming. (2 Thessalonians 2:8)

And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the **Lord Jesus** will destroy with the breath of his mouth, annihilating him by the manifestation of his coming. (Philemon 1:4-5)

Now may the God of peace, who brought back from the dead our **Lord Jesus**, the great shepherd of the sheep, by the blood of the eternal covenant,<sup>21</sup> make you complete in everything good so that you may do his will, working among us that which is pleasing in his sight, through **Jesus Christ**, to whom be the glory for ever and ever. Amen. (Hebrews 13:20-21)

The one who testifies to these things says, 'Surely I am coming soon.' Amen. Come, **Lord Jesus!** (Revelation 22:20)

## ***Lord Jesus Christ***

If then God gave them the same gift that he gave us when we believed in the **Lord Jesus Christ**, who was I that I could hinder God?' (Acts 11:17)

Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the **Lord Jesus Christ**. (Romans 1:7; 1 Corinthians 1:3; 2 Corinthians 1:2; Galatians 1:3; Ephesians 1:2; Philippians 1:2; 2 Thessalonians 1:2; Philemon 1:3)

But thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our **Lord Jesus Christ**. (1 Corinthians 15:57)

For you know the generous act of our **Lord Jesus Christ**, that though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, so that by his poverty you might become rich. (2 Corinthians 8:9)

The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit be with all of you. (2 Corinthians 13:13 NRSV)

But our citizenship is in heaven, and it is from there that we are expecting a **Saviour**, the **Lord Jesus Christ**. (Philippians 3:20)

The grace of our **Lord Jesus Christ** be with you (Romans 16:20; 1 Thessalonians 5:28; 2 Thessalonians 3:18)

## **Messiah / Christ**

*The NRSV translates the Greek title 'Christos' as both Messiah (from Hebrew) and Christ (from Greek). Many translations only use Christ.*

An account of the genealogy of **Jesus the Messiah**, the **son of David**, the son of Abraham. (Matthew 1:1)

Jacob the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom **Jesus** was born, who is called the **Messiah**. (Matthew 1:16)

Now the birth of **Jesus the Messiah** took place in this way. When his mother Mary had been engaged to Joseph, but before they lived together, she was found to be with child from the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18)

When King Herod heard this, he was frightened, and all Jerusalem with him; <sup>4</sup>and calling together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, he inquired of them where the **Messiah** was to be born. <sup>5</sup>They told him, 'In Bethlehem of Judea; for so it has been written by the prophet...  
(Matthew 2:3-5; see Micah 5:2)

Simon Peter answered, 'You are the **Messiah, the Son of the living God.**' (Matthew 16:16; see Mark 8:29)

Then he sternly ordered the disciples not to tell anyone that he was the **Messiah**. (Matthew 16:20; see Luke 9:21)

'What do you think of the **Messiah**? Whose son is he?' They said to him, 'The **son of David.**' (Matthew 22:42)

And do not be called teachers; for One is your **Teacher, the Christ**.  
(Matthew 23:10 NKJV)

But Jesus was silent. Then the high priest said to him, 'I put you under oath before the living God, tell us if you are **the Messiah, the Son of God.**' <sup>64</sup>Jesus said to him, 'You have said so. But I tell you,

From now on you will see the **Son of Man**

seated at the right hand of Power  
and coming on the clouds of heaven.'

(Matthew 26:63-64; see Mark 14:61-62; Luke 22:70; Daniel 7:13-14)

'Prophecy to us, you **Messiah!** Who is it that struck you?' (Matthew 26:68)

So after they had gathered, Pilate said to them, 'Whom do you want me to release for you, Jesus Barabbas or **Jesus who is called the Messiah?**'

(Matthew 27:17; see Mark 15:7-12; Luke 23:18; John 18:39-40)

Pilate said to them, 'Then what should I do with **Jesus who is called the Messiah?**' All of them said, 'Let him be crucified!'

(Matthew 27:22; see Mark 15:12-13; Luke 23:20-21; John 19:14-15)

Let the **Messiah, the King of Israel**, come down from the cross now, so that we may see and believe. (Mark 15:32)

to you is born this day in the city of David a **Saviour**, who is **the Messiah, the Lord**. (Luke 2:11)

It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the **Lord's Messiah**. (Luke 2:26)

Demons also came out of many, shouting, 'You are the **Son of God!**' But he rebuked them and would not allow them to speak, because they knew that he was the **Messiah**. (Luke 4:41)

They said, 'If you are the **Messiah**, tell us.' He replied, 'If I tell you, you will not believe. (Luke 22:67)

They began to accuse him, saying, 'We found this man perverting our nation, forbidding us to pay taxes to the emperor, and saying that he himself is the **Messiah**, a king.' (Luke 23:2)

And the people stood by, watching; but the leaders scoffed at him, saying, 'He saved others; let him save himself if he is the **Messiah of God**, his chosen one!' (Luke 23:35)

One of the criminals who were hanged there kept deriding him and saying, 'Are you not the **Messiah**? Save yourself and us!' (Luke 23:39)

Was it not necessary that the **Messiah** should suffer these things and then enter into his glory?' (Luke 24:26)

Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup>and he said to them, 'Thus it is written, that the **Messiah** is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup>and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem. (Luke 24:45-47)

He first found his brother Simon and said to him, 'We have found the **Messiah**' (John 1:41)

And here he is, speaking openly, but they say nothing to him! Can it be that the authorities really know that this is the **Messiah**? (John 7:26)

Others said, 'This is the **Messiah**.' But some asked, 'Surely the **Messiah** does not come from Galilee, does he? Has not the scripture said that the **Messiah** is descended from David and comes from Bethlehem, the village where David lived?' (John 7:41-42)

His parents said this because they were afraid of the Jews; for the Jews had already agreed that anyone who confessed Jesus to be the **Messiah** would be put out of the synagogue. (John 9:22)

So the Jews gathered around him and said to him, 'How long will you keep us in suspense? If you are the **Messiah**, tell us plainly.' (John 10:24)

## *The Lion of Judah*

'Yes, Lord, I believe that you are the **Messiah, the Son of God**, the one coming into the world.' (John 11:27)

The crowd answered him, 'We have heard from the law that the **Messiah** remains for ever. How can you say that the **Son of Man** must be lifted up? Who is this **Son of Man**?' (John 12:34)

But these are written so that you may come to believe that **Jesus** is the **Messiah, the Son of God**, and that through believing you may have life in his name. (John 20:31)

David spoke of the resurrection of the **Messiah**, saying, "He was not abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh experience corruption." (Acts 2:31)

Therefore let the entire house of Israel know with certainty that God has made him both **Lord and Messiah**, this **Jesus** whom you crucified.' (Acts 2:36)

In this way God fulfilled what he had foretold through all the prophets, that his **Messiah** would suffer. <sup>19</sup> Repent therefore, and turn to God so that your sins may be wiped out, <sup>20</sup> so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that he may send the **Messiah** appointed for you, that is, **Jesus**, <sup>21</sup> who must remain in heaven until the time of universal restoration that God announced long ago through his holy prophets. (Acts 3:18-21)

The kings of the earth took their stand, and the rulers have gathered together against the Lord and against his **Messiah**. (Acts 4:26)

And every day in the temple and at home they did not cease to teach and proclaim **Jesus as the Messiah**. (Acts 5:42)

Philip went down to the city of Samaria and proclaimed the **Messiah** to them. (Act 8:5)

Saul became increasingly more powerful and confounded the Jews who lived in Damascus by proving that **Jesus** was the **Messiah**. (Acts 9:22)

As was his custom, Paul went into the synagogue, and on three Sabbath days he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, <sup>3</sup> explaining and proving that the **Messiah** had to suffer and rise from the dead. "This **Jesus** I am proclaiming to you is the **Messiah**," he said. (Acts 17:2-3 NIV)

Paul was occupied with proclaiming the word, testifying to the Jews that the **Messiah** was **Jesus**. (Acts 18:5)

he powerfully refuted the Jews in public, showing by the scriptures that the **Messiah** is **Jesus**. (Acts 18:28)

To this day I have had help from God, and so I stand here, testifying to both small and great, saying nothing but what the prophets and Moses said would take place: <sup>23</sup> that the **Messiah** must suffer, and that, by being the first to rise from the dead, he would proclaim light both to our people and to the Gentiles.' (Acts 26:22-23)

They are Israelites, and to them belong the adoption, the glory, the covenants, the giving of the law, the worship, and the promises; <sup>5</sup> to them belong the patriarchs, and from them, according to the flesh, comes the **Messiah**, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen. (Romans 9:4-5)

'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his **Messiah**, and he will reign for ever and ever.' (Revelation 11:15)

Then I heard a loud voice in heaven, proclaiming, 'Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his **Messiah**, for the accuser of our comrades has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God. (Revelation 12:10)

## ***Master***

Simon answered, '**Master**, we have worked all night long but have caught nothing. Yet if you say so, I will let down the nets.' (Luke 5:5)

They went to him and woke him up, shouting, '**Master, Master**, we are perishing!' And he woke up and rebuked the wind and the raging waves; they ceased, and there was a calm. (Luke 8:24; see Matthew 8:25; Mark 4:38)

Then **Jesus** asked, 'Who touched me?' When all denied it, Peter said, '**Master**, the crowds surround you and press in on you.' (Luke 8:45)

Just as they were leaving him, Peter said to **Jesus**, '**Master**, it is good for us to be here; let us make three dwellings, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah'—not knowing what he said. (Luke 9:33)

John answered, '**Master**, we saw someone casting out demons in your name, and we tried to stop him, because he does not follow with us.' (Luke 9:49)

they called out, saying, '**Jesus, Master**, have mercy on us!' (Luke 17:13)

I do not call you servants any longer, because the servant does not know what the **master** is doing; but I have called you friends, because I have made known to you everything that I have heard from my Father. (John 15:15)

our only **Master** and Lord, Jesus Christ. (Jude 1:4)

## ***The Word***

In the beginning was **the Word**, and **the Word** was with God, and **the Word** was God.  
(John 1:1)

The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the one and only Son, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.  
(John 1:14)

## ***The Word of God***

### ***King of Kings and Lord of Lords***

*The Book of Revelation reveals how Jesus, The Lion of the tribe of Judah, has conquered. Revelation is filled with visions of Jesus in his glory, majesty, splendour and might. The book builds to the climax of the closing chapters where the names of Jesus include The Word of God (the Logos, as in John 1:1, 14) and the King of kings and the Lord of lords.*

Now I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse. And He who sat on him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He judges and makes war. <sup>12</sup> His eyes were like a flame of fire, and on His head were many crowns. He had a name written that no one knew except Himself. <sup>13</sup> He was clothed with a robe dipped in blood, and His name is called **The Word of God**. <sup>14</sup> And the armies in heaven, clothed in fine linen, white and clean, followed Him on white horses. <sup>15</sup> Now out of His mouth goes a sharp sword, that with it He should strike the nations. And He Himself will rule them with a rod of iron. He Himself treads the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. <sup>16</sup> And He has on *His* robe and on His thigh a name written:

#### **KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.**

(Revelation 19:11-16 NKJV)



## ***King***

When **Jesus** realized that they were about to come and take him by force to make him **king**, he withdrew again to the mountain by himself. (John 6:15)

Then the **king** will say to those at his right hand, 'Come, you that are blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world (Matthew 25:34)

And the **king** will answer them, 'Truly I tell you, just as you did it to one of the least of these who are members of my family, you did it to me.' (Matthew 25:40)

Look, your **king** is coming, sitting on a donkey's colt! (John 12:15; see Matthew 21:5; John 12:15; Zechariah 9:9)

"Blessed is the **king** who comes in the name of the Lord! Peace in heaven, and glory in the highest heaven!" (Luke 19:38)

They began to accuse him, saying, "We found this man perverting our nation, forbidding us to pay taxes to the emperor, and saying that he himself is the **Messiah, a king.**" (Luke 23:2)

Pilate asked him, "So you are a **king**?" Jesus answered, "You say that I am a **king**. For this I was born, and for this I came into the world, to testify to the truth." (John 18:37)

From then on Pilate tried to release him, but the Jews cried out, "If you release this man, you are no friend of the emperor. Everyone who claims to be a **king** sets himself against the emperor." (John 19:12)

Now it was the day of Preparation for the Passover; and it was about noon. He said to the Jews, 'Here is your **King!**'<sup>15</sup> They cried out, "Away with him! Away with him! Crucify him!" Pilate asked them, "Shall I crucify your **King**?" (John 19:14-15)

On his robe and on his thigh he has a name inscribed, "**King** of kings and **Lord** of lords." (Revelation 19:6)

## ***King of the Jews***

Where is the child who has been born **king of the Jews**? (Matthew 2:2)

Are you the **King of the Jews**?’ Jesus said, ‘You say so.’  
(Matthew 27:11; see Mark 15:2; Luke 23:3)

Then he answered them, “Do you want me to release for you the **King of the Jews**?”  
(Mark 15:9; see John 18:39)

Pilate spoke to them again, “Then what do you wish me to do with the man you call the **King of the Jews**?” (Mark 15:12)

Hail, **King of the Jews**! (Matthew 27:29; see Mark 15:18; John 19:3)

“If you are the **King of the Jews**, save yourself!” (Luke 23:37)

**Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.**

(John 19:19; Matthew 27:37; see Mark 15:26; Luke 23:38)

Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate, “Do not write, ‘The **King of the Jews**,’ but, ‘This man said, I am **King of the Jews**.’” (John 19:21)

## ***King of Israel***

Rabbi, you are the **Son of God**! You are the **King of Israel** (John 1:49)

‘Hosanna! Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord—the **King of Israel**!’ (John 12:13; see Psalm 118:26)

Let the **Messiah, the King of Israel**, come down from the cross now, so that we may see and believe (Mark 15:32; see Matthew 27:42)

## ***Saviour***

He has raised up a mighty **saviour** for us in the house of his servant David  
(Luke 1:69)

to you is born this day in the city of David a **Saviour**, who is the **Messiah**, the **Lord**  
(Luke 2:11)

God exalted him at his right hand as **Leader and Saviour** (Acts 5:31)

God has brought to Israel a **Saviour, Jesus**, as he promised (Acts 13:23)

**Christ** is the head of the church, the body of which he is the **Saviour**  
(Ephesians 5:23)

But our citizenship is in heaven, and it is from there that we are expecting a **Saviour**,  
the **Lord Jesus Christ** (Philippians 3:20)

## ***Saviour of the World***

we know that this is truly the **Saviour of the world** (John 4:42)

the Father has sent **his Son** as the **Saviour of the world** (1 John 4:14)

## ***Lamb of God***

*Jesus, gave himself as the spotless, sacrificial Lamb of God who redeems and saves us by shedding his blood. He died on the day the Passover lambs were killed, our Paschal Lamb, the atoning sacrifice for the sins of the world God so loved. 'For indeed Christ, our Passover, was sacrificed for us.' (1 Corinthians 5:7 NKJV).*

Behold the **Lamb of God** who takes away the sin of the world. (John 1:29)

The next day John again was standing with two of his disciples, <sup>36</sup>and as he watched Jesus walk by, he exclaimed, "Look, here is the **Lamb of God!**"  
(John 1:35-36)

## **The Lamb**

*Jesus as the Lamb slain and victorious is a major theme in the Revelation.*

When he had taken the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell before **the Lamb**, each holding a harp and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. (Revelation 5:8)

'Worthy is **the Lamb** that was slaughtered to receive power and wealth and wisdom and might and honour and glory and blessing!' <sup>13</sup> Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the sea, and all that is in them, singing, 'To the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb be blessing and honour and glory and might for ever and ever!' (Revelation 5:12-13)

Then I saw **the Lamb** open one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures call out, as with a voice of thunder, 'Come!' (Revelation 6:1)

Fall on us and hide us from the face of the one seated on the throne and from the wrath of **the Lamb** (Revelation 6:16)

After this I looked, and there was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, from all tribes and peoples and languages, standing before the throne and before **the Lamb**, robed in white, with palm branches in their hands. <sup>10</sup> They cried out in a loud voice, saying,

'Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and to **the Lamb**!' ...

<sup>13</sup> Then one of the elders addressed me, saying, 'Who are these, robed in white, and where have they come from?' <sup>14</sup> I said to him, 'Sir, you are the one that knows.' Then he said to me, 'These are they who have come out of the great ordeal; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

<sup>15</sup> For this reason they are before the throne of God,  
and worship him day and night within his temple,  
and the one who is seated on the throne will shelter them.

<sup>16</sup> They will hunger no more, and thirst no more;  
the sun will not strike them,  
nor any scorching heat;

<sup>17</sup> for the Lamb at the centre of the throne will be their shepherd,  
and he will guide them to springs of the water of life,  
and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes.' (Revelation 7:9-10, 13-17)

When **the Lamb** opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven for about half an hour. (Revelation 8:1)

But they have conquered him by the blood of **the Lamb** and by the word of their testimony, for they did not cling to life even in the face of death. (Revelation 12:11)

## ***Rabbi / Teacher***

“But you are not to be called ‘**Rabbi**,’ for you have one **Teacher**, and you are all brothers. (Matthew 23:8)

And do not be called teachers; for One is your **Teacher, the Christ**.  
(Matthew 23:10 NKJV)

Then Judas, the one who would betray him, said, “Surely you don’t mean me, **Rabbi**?”  
**Jesus** answered, “You have said so.” (Matthew 26:25)

Going at once to **Jesus**, Judas said, “Greetings, **Rabbi**!” and kissed him. (Matthew 26:49; see Mark 14:45)

But he was in the stern, asleep on the cushion; and they woke him up and said to him, ‘**Teacher**, do you not care that we are perishing?’  
(Mark 4:38; see Matthew 8:25; Luke 8:24)

Then Peter said to **Jesus**, ‘**Rabbi**, it is good for us to be here; let us make three dwellings, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.’  
(Mark 9:5; see Matthew 17:4; Luke 9:33)

“What do you want me to do for you?” **Jesus** asked him. The blind man said, “**Rabbi**, I want to see.” (Mark 10:51)

Turning around, Jesus saw them following and asked, “What do you want?” They said, “**Rabbi**” (which means “Teacher”), “where are you staying?”  
(John 1:38)

**Rabbi**, you are the **Son of God**! You are the **King of Israel** (John 1:49)

He came to **Jesus** at night and said, “**Rabbi**, we know that you are a teacher who has come from God. For no one could perform the signs you are doing if God were not with him.” (John 3:2)

Meanwhile his disciples urged him, “**Rabbi**, eat something.” (John 4:31)

When they found him on the other side of the lake, they asked him, “**Rabbi**, when did you get here?” (John 6:25)

## ***Leader/ Prince***

God exalted him at his right hand as **Leader and Saviour** (Acts 5:31)

## ***Righteous One***

But you rejected the **Holy and Righteous One** and asked to have a murderer given to you, (Acts 3:14)

They killed those who foretold the coming of the **Righteous One**, and now you have become his betrayers and murderers. (Acts 7:52)

Then he said, "The God of our ancestors has chosen you to know his will, to see the **Righteous One** and to hear his own voice (Acts 22:14)

You have condemned and murdered the **righteous one**, who does not resist you. (James 5:6)

**Jesus Christ the righteous** (1 John 2:1)

## ***Holy One***

'Let us alone! What have you to do with us, **Jesus of Nazareth**? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are, the **Holy One of God.**'  
(Luke 4:34; see Mark 1:24)

We have come to believe and know that you are the **Holy One of God.**'  
(John 6:69)

But you rejected the **Holy and Righteous One** and asked to have a murderer given to you (Acts 3:14)

Therefore he has also said in another psalm, "You will not let your **Holy One** experience corruption." (Acts 13:35; see Psalm 16:10)

But you have been anointed by the **Holy One.** (1 John 2:20)

These are the words of the **holy one**, the true one, who has the key of David, who opens and no one will shut, who shuts and no one opens:  
(Revelation 3:7)

## ***True One***

These are the words of **the holy one, the true one**, who has the key of David, who opens and no one will shut, who shuts and no one opens:  
(Revelation 3:7)

## ***Faithful and True***

Then I saw heaven opened, and there was a white horse! Its rider is called **Faithful and True**, and in righteousness he judges and makes war.  
(Revelation 19:11)

## ***The Amen***

The words of **the Amen**, the faithful and true witness, the origin of God's creation ...  
(Revelation 3:14)

## ***The Branch***

Now listen, Joshua, high priest, you and your colleagues who sit before you! For they are an omen of things to come: I am going to bring **my servant the Branch**.<sup>9</sup> For on the stone that I have set before Joshua, on a single stone with seven facets, I will engrave its inscription, says the LORD of hosts, and I will remove the guilt of this land in a single day.<sup>10</sup> On that day, says the LORD of hosts, you shall invite each other to come under your vine and fig tree.' (Zechariah 3:8-10)

Thus says the LORD of hosts: Here is a man whose name is **Branch**: for he shall branch out in his place, and he shall build the temple of the LORD.<sup>13</sup> It is he that shall build the temple of the LORD; he shall bear royal honour, and shall sit and rule on his throne. There shall be a priest by his throne, with peaceful understanding between the two of them.  
(Zechariah 6:12-13)

## ***Root of David***

The **root of Jesse** shall come, the one who rises to rule the Gentiles; in him the Gentiles shall hope (Romans 15:12; Isaiah 11:1, 10 [Jesse, David's father, of the tribe of Judah])

I am **the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star**  
(Revelation 22:16; 5:5)

## ***Servant***

*God's Servant, the Servant of the Lord, is a Messianic title fulfilled in Jesus. The two titles Jesus himself used, "servant" and "Son of man" (rather than "Messiah") are both individual and corporate in the Old Testament. "The Servant of the Lord" a term used often in the Old Testament can refer both to the nation of Israel and to the Messiah. Jesus said, "I am among you as one who serves" (Luke 22:27)*

**The righteous one, my servant,** shall make many righteous,  
and he shall bear their iniquities. (Isaiah 53:11)

## ***Cornerstone***

Jesus said to them, "Have you never read in the Scriptures:  
"The stone the builders rejected  
has become the **cornerstone**;  
the Lord has done this,  
and it is marvelous in our eyes?"  
(Matthew 21:42 NIV; see Psalm 118:22-23)

This **Jesus** is "the stone that was rejected by you, the builders; it has become the **cornerstone**." (Acts 4:11)

So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are citizens with the saints and also members of the household of God, <sup>20</sup>built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with **Christ Jesus** himself as the **cornerstone**. (Ephesians 2:19-20)

For it stands in scripture: 'See, I am laying in Zion a stone, a **cornerstone** chosen and precious; and whoever believes in him will not be put to shame.'  
(1 Peter 2:6; see Psalm 118:22-23)



## ***The Name***

As they left the council, they rejoiced that they were considered worthy to suffer dishonour for the sake of **the name**. (Acts 5:41)

Therefore God also highly exalted him and gave him **the name** that is above every name (Philippians 2:9)

It was for the sake of **the Name** that they went out (3 John 1:7 NIV)

## ***The Almighty***

“I am **the Alpha and the Omega**,” says the Lord God, “who is, and who was, and who is to come, **the Almighty**.” (Revelation 1:8)

## ***Emmanuel/Immanuel***

Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign: The virgin will conceive and give birth to a son, and will call him **Immanuel**. (Isaiah 7:14 NIV)

‘Look, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and they shall name him **Emmanuel**’, which means, ‘God is with us’ (Matthew 1:23)

## ***Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace***

For a child has been born for us, a son given to us; authority rests upon his shoulders; and he is named **Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace**. (Isaiah 9:6)

## ***I am***

Very truly, I tell you, before Abraham was, **I am** (John 8:58)

### ***The Bread of life, living bread***

**I am the bread of life** (John 6:35, 48)

**I am the living bread** (John 6:51)

### ***The Light of the world***

**I am the light of the world** (John 8:12; 9:5)

### ***The Door/Gate***

**I am the door/gate** (John 10:7, 9)

### ***The Good shepherd***

**I am the good shepherd** (John 10:11, 14)

a ruler who is to **shepherd** my people Israel (Matthew 2:6)

### ***The Resurrection, the life***

**I am the resurrection and the life** (John 11:25)

### ***The way, the truth, the life***

**I am the way, and the truth, and the life** (John 14:6)

### ***The True vine***

**I am the true vine** (John 15:1)

**I am the vine, you are the branches** (John 15:5)

***The Alpha and the Omega***  
***The first and the last***  
***The beginning and the end***

**I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.**  
(Revelation 22:13; 1:8, 11; 21:6).

***The root and the descendant of David***  
***The bright morning star***

**I am the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star**  
(Revelation 22:16; 5:5)

***I AM***

*For children & youth – a way to remember these I AM statements*

- 1 – bun: I am the bread of life*
- 2 – shoe: I am the way, the truth, and the life*
- 3 – tree: I am the good shepherd (in the tree's shade)*
- 4 – door: I am the door*
- 5 – hive: I am the resurrection and the life (if you sit on it)*
- 6 – sticks: I am the light of the world (sticks on fire for light)*
- 7 – heaven: I am the Alpha and the Omega ... beginning and the end*
- 8 – gate: I am the first and the last (going through a gate)*
- 9 – vine: I am the true vine*
- 10 – hen: I am the bright morning star (hen/rooster greets morning)*

***Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book. But these are written so that you may come to believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and that through believing you may have life in his name.***  
***(John 20:30-31)***



*Chapter 2*  
*The Reign of Jesus*



*The Lion of Judah Reigns*

## **The Lion of Judah in Scripture**

*This chapter examines how Jesus, the Lion of Judah, fulfilled prophecies about him in the Scriptures.*

*I introduce the selections here from each Gospel with a brief overview of the approach of each of the Gospel writers. Although their writing was partly biographical they were not writing biographies of Jesus. They wrote Gospels – telling the good news about Jesus in different ways. Those comments are reproduced from my study books on the Gospels: **Kingdom Life in Matthew, Kingdom Life in Mark, Kingdom Life in Luke, and Kingdom Life in John.** You can see the contents of these books on [www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com).*

*Matthew, Mark and Luke, the synoptic Gospels, are similar in their narratives, often drawing on common material. Matthew, writing especially for Jews, emphasizes how Jesus fulfilled the Scriptures as the long awaited Messiah. Mark, probably the first written, gives us a condensed version in this fast paced narrative right from the first chapter. Luke, the doctor historian, draws on many sources for his detailed narrative in two parts, the Gospel of Luke and The Acts of the Apostles.*

*John tells his good news by compiling Jesus' words around seven miraculous signs he performed, writing his evangelistic message so that we might believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and have life by believing in him (John 20:31).*

*This chapter shows how Jesus, the Lion of the Tribe of Judah, fulfils the Old Testament Scriptures as God's Messiah, the Christ, the Anointed One. It tells how Jesus himself, all the Gospel writers, and the early church declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

*Some of the most relevant Old Testament passages fulfilled in Jesus are included here from the Psalms and the Prophets. The chapter concludes with summaries in chart form of the many prophecies from Scripture fulfilled in Jesus.*

*Although "The Lion of the tribe of Judah" is a title given to the crucified and risen Jesus/Joshua – Saviour – in the book of Revelation, this chapter explores how that reality of his triumph and reign is found in all Scripture and is the fulfilment of Scripture.*

## ***Jesus declared that he fulfilled Scripture***

But all this has taken place, so that the scriptures of the prophets may be fulfilled.  
(Matthew 26:56)

Then he took the twelve aside and said to them, ‘See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and everything that is written about the Son of Man by the prophets will be accomplished.  
(Luke 18:31)

For I tell you, this scripture must be fulfilled in me, “And he was counted among the lawless”; and indeed what is written about me is being fulfilled.’  
(Luke 22:37; see Isaiah 53:12)

Then beginning with Moses and all the prophets, he interpreted to them the things about himself in all the scriptures.  
(Luke 24:27)

‘These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about me in the law of Moses, the prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.’ Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup>and he said to them, ‘Thus it is written, that the Messiah is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup>and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem.  
(Luke 24:44-47)

You search the scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; and it is they that testify on my behalf.  
(John 5:39)

## **Matthew declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture**

*Matthew the evangelist wrote especially for Jews. He begins his gospel presenting Jesus Christ as the son of David, the son of Abraham. He ends his gospel with the Great Commission declaring that Jesus sends his followers into all nations. In Jesus, God's covenant embraces the whole world.*

*This radical evangelistic missionary gospel shocked traditional Jews. Matthew insists that Jesus was the long awaited Messiah, backing up his claims with many quotations from the Old Testament. He argues that Jesus did not do away with the Scriptures, but fulfilled them (5:17). He emphasises the missionary nature of Jesus' ministry and of his church.*

*This gospel continually confronted the Jewish Christian community as well as other Jews. Here is a persistent and urgent call to mission. The good news is for all people, not only for Jews.*

*Matthew begins his Gospel telling of the coming of Jesus the Messiah who proclaims God's kingdom (1:1; 2:2). The figure of Jesus the Messiah is announced by John the Baptist, as prophesied (3:1-3).*

*The beginning of the ministry in Galilee shows Christ's design for life in God's kingdom, again fulfilling prophecy (4:15-17, 23). Chapters 5-7 gather the words of Jesus together in 'The Sermon on the Mount' in which we are challenged to seek first the kingdom of God (6:33). Here is the kingdom charter, the ethics of kingdom living. The chapters that follow demonstrate God's kingdom in the works of Jesus.*

*Matthew gathers the discourses of Jesus as teaching segments throughout his narrative. He often uses the phrase 'kingdom of heaven' for 'kingdom of God' in typical Jewish reverence for the word 'God' (19:23-24).*

*Jesus' ministry is summarised in 4:23 as teaching in their synagogues, preaching the good news of the kingdom, and healing every disease and sickness. This statement introduces the words and works of Jesus in chapters 5-9. Then in 9:35 the same statement is repeated. Here it introduces the mission of Jesus' followers.*

*The mission discourse commencing from 9:35 tells of Jesus' plan for the spread of God's kingdom. His disciples will continue his ministry. They will proclaim the kingdom of God (10:1, 7-8).*

*The chapters following the mission discourse show the radical nature of the mystery of God's kingdom. This mystery is revealed by Jesus to those committed to him (11:27; 13:11), but concealed from others, as indicated in the parable discourses of chapter 13.*

*Matthew, the only gospel writer to use the word church, points out that Jesus' church has his authority (16:18-19; 18:17-18). The church is the agent of God's kingdom and manifests the kingdom in the world.*

*Tensions with the keepers of Israel's traditions reached flash point and boiled over into Jesus' arrest and execution. That is the volatile setting in which Jesus pressed his*



*authority and invitation as the ministry ends. The king is crowned with thorns and crucified. Apparent defeat in death is then turned into the amazing victory of resurrection. Christ the King reigns. We all acknowledge his reign in the end. In Jesus' victory we see God's kingdom fulfilled.*

*The mysteries of the passion of Jesus, his death and resurrection and the promise of the Holy Spirit conclude with the astounding claim in the Great Commission that all authority in heaven and on earth has been given to Jesus, God's Son, the Messiah. He commissions us to make disciples of all nations. He is with us to the end.*

*Further details about Matthew's gospel are included in the Resources at the end of this book in the contents outline of the book **Kingdom Life in Matthew**.*

*The verses selected here show how Matthew, often referring to the Old Testament, declared that Jesus, the Messiah (Hebrew), the Christ (Greek) fulfilled Scripture.*

All this took place to fulfil what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet: 'Look, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and they shall name him Emmanuel'; which means, 'God is with us.'

(Matthew 1:22-23; see Isaiah 7:14)

They told him, 'In Bethlehem of Judea; for so it has been written by the prophet:

"And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are by no means least among the rulers of Judah;  
for from you shall come a ruler  
who is to shepherd my people Israel."

(Matthew 2:5-6; see Micah 5:2)

Then was fulfilled what had been spoken through the prophet Jeremiah:

'A voice was heard in Ramah,  
wailing and loud lamentation,  
Rachel weeping for her children;  
she refused to be consoled, because they are no more.'

(Matthew 3:17-18; see Jeremiah 31:15)

This is the one of whom the prophet Isaiah spoke when he said,

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness:  
"Prepare the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight."

(Matthew 3:3; see Mark 1:1-3; Luke 3:4-6; Isaiah 40:3)

Now when Jesus heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee. <sup>13</sup> He left Nazareth and made his home in Capernaum by the lake, in the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali, <sup>14</sup> so that what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah might be fulfilled:

<sup>15</sup> 'Land of Zebulun, land of Naphtali,

on the road by the sea, across the Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles—

<sup>16</sup> the people who sat in darkness

have seen a great light,

and for those who sat in the region and shadow of death

light has dawned.'

(Matthew 4:13-16; see Isaiah 9:1-2)

## *The Lion of Judah*

This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah, 'He took our infirmities and bore our diseases.' (Matthew 8:17; see Isaiah 53:4)

For I have come to set a man against his father,  
and a daughter against her mother,  
and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law;  
and one's foes will be members of one's own household.  
(Matthew 10:35-36; see Micah 7:6)

This is the one about whom it is written,  
"See, I am sending my messenger ahead of you,  
who will prepare your way before you."  
(Matthew 11:10; see Malachi 3:1)

This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah:  
'Here is my servant, whom I have chosen,  
my beloved, with whom my soul is well pleased.  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.  
He will not wrangle or cry aloud,  
nor will anyone hear his voice in the streets.  
He will not break a bruised reed  
or quench a smouldering wick  
until he brings justice to victory.  
And in his name the Gentiles will hope.'  
(Matthew 12:17-21; see Isaiah 42:1-4)

With them indeed is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah that says:  
"You will indeed listen, but never understand,  
and you will indeed look, but never perceive.  
For this people's heart has grown dull,  
and their ears are hard of hearing,  
and they have shut their eyes;  
so that they might not look with their eyes,  
and listen with their ears,  
and understand with their heart and turn—  
and I would heal them."  
(Matthew 13:14-15; see Mark 4:11-12; Luke 8:10; Isaiah 6:9-10)

This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet:  
'I will open my mouth to speak in parables;  
I will proclaim what has been hidden from the foundation of the world.'  
(Matthew 13:35; see Psalm 78:2)

Isaiah prophesied rightly about you when he said:  
"This people honours me with their lips,  
but their hearts are far from me;  
in vain do they worship me,  
teaching human precepts as doctrines."  
(Matthew 15:7-9; see Mark 7:6-7; Isaiah 29:13)

This took place to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet, saying,  
‘Tell the daughter of Zion,  
Look, your king is coming to you,  
humble, and mounted on a donkey,  
and on a colt, the foal of a donkey.’  
(Matthew 21:4-5; see Zechariah 9:9)

The crowds that went ahead of him and that followed were shouting,  
‘Hosanna to the Son of David!  
Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!  
Hosanna in the highest heaven!’  
(Matthew 21:9; see Mark 11:10-11; Luke 19:38; Psalm 118:25-26)

Then Jesus entered the temple and drove out all who were selling and buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money-changers and the seats of those who sold doves. <sup>13</sup> He said to them,  
‘It is written,  
“My house shall be called a house of prayer”;  
but you are making it a den of robbers.’  
(Matthew 21:12-13; see Mark 11:15-18; Luke 19:45-48; John 2:13-17; Isaiah 56:7; Jeremiah 7:11)

Jesus said to them, ‘Yes; have you never read,  
“Out of the mouths of infants and nursing babies  
you have prepared praise for yourself”?’  
(Matthew 21:16; see Psalm 8:2)

Jesus said to them, ‘Have you never read in the scriptures:  
“The stone that the builders rejected  
has become the cornerstone;  
this was the Lord’s doing,  
and it is amazing in our eyes”?’  
(Matthew 21:42; see Mark 12:10-11; Luke 20:17; Psalm 118:22-23)

‘What do you think of the Messiah? Whose son is he?’ They said to him, ‘The son of David.’ He said to them, ‘How is it then that David by the Spirit calls him Lord, saying,  
“The Lord said to my Lord,  
‘Sit at my right hand,  
until I put your enemies under your feet”?’  
(Matthew 22:42-44; see Mark 12:36-37; Luke 20:42-44; Psalm 110:1)

Immediately after the suffering of those days  
the sun will be darkened,  
and the moon will not give its light;  
the stars will fall from heaven,  
and the powers of heaven will be shaken.

Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see “the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven” with power and great glory.  
(Matthew 24:29-30; see Mark 13:24-25; Ezekiel 32:7; Daniel 7:13-14)

Then Jesus said to them, 'You will all become deserters because of me this night; for it is written,

"I will strike the shepherd,  
and the sheep of the flock will be scattered."

(Matthew 26:31; see Mark 14:27; Zechariah 13:17)

Then was fulfilled what had been spoken through the prophet Jeremiah, [Some MS: Zechariah] 'And they took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of the one on whom a price had been set, on whom some of the people of Israel had set a price, <sup>10</sup> and they gave them for the potter's field, as the Lord commanded me.' (Matthew 27:9-10; see Zechariah 11:12-13)

And about three o'clock Jesus cried with a loud voice, 'Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?' that is, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'

(Matthew 27:46; see Mark 15:34; Psalm 22:1)

## ***Mark declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture***

*Mark gives a vigorous, concise account of Jesus. The narrative moves swiftly. A brief prologue leads immediately into Jesus' ministry as he appears proclaiming and demonstrating the kingdom of God. Kingdom life fills the pages.*

*Central to that drama is the cross. Mark has been described as a passion narrative with an introduction. Jesus is introduced as the Son of God in the first verse. Chapters 1-8 reveal the mystery of the Son of God seen in Jesus' three year ministry based in Galilee.*

*Then the drama shifts in chapter 8 with Peter's confession that Jesus is the Christ, the Messiah. Jesus immediately predicts his death and prepares his disciples for it (8:31; 9:30-31; 10:32-34). The Messiah must sacrifice his life. The way of the Son of Man is the way of the cross. Chapters 11-16 describe that final week in Jerusalem.*

*Further details about Mark's gospel are included in the Resources at the end of this book in the contents outline of the book **Kingdom Life in Mark**.*

*The following two passages from Mark about Jesus fulfilling Scripture are also included in Matthew and Luke in varying forms.*

The beginning of the good news of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

As it is written in the prophet Isaiah,

'See, I am sending my messenger ahead of you,  
who will prepare your way;  
the voice of one crying out in the wilderness:  
"Prepare the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight."

(Mark 1:1-3; see Matthew 3:3; Luke 3:4-6; Malachi 3:1; Isaiah 40:3)

Then those who went ahead and those who followed were shouting,  
'Hosanna!  
Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!  
Blessed is the coming kingdom of our ancestor David!  
Hosanna in the highest heaven!  
(Mark 11:10-11; see Matthew 21:9; Luke 19:38; Psalm 118:25-26)

*Mark, the shortest gospel and first written, has other passages repeated in Matthew and Luke, as listed above under Matthew. These include:*

You will indeed listen, but never understand, ...  
(Matthew 13:14-15; Mark 4:11-12; Luke 8:10; Isaiah 6:9-10)

This people honours me with their lips, ...  
(Matthew 15:7-9; Mark 7:6-7; Isaiah 29:13)

The stone that the builders rejected ...  
(Matthew 21:42; Mark 12:10-11; Luke 20:17; Psalm 118:22-23)

'What do you think of the Messiah? Whose son is he?' ...  
(Matthew 22:42-44; Mark 12:36-37; Luke 20:42-44; Psalm 110:1)

Immediately after the suffering of those days ...  
(Matthew 24:29-30; Mark 13:24-25; Ezekiel 32:7)

Then Jesus said to them, 'You will all become deserters ...  
(Matthew 26:31; Mark 14:27; Zechariah 13:17)

At three o'clock Jesus cried out with a loud voice, 'Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani?' which means, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'  
(Mark 15:34; see Matthew 27:46; Psalm 22:1)

*This last quote, from Psalm 22:1 is the only saying of Jesus on the cross reported in more than one of the Gospels.*

## ***Luke declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture***

*Luke is the only Gentile author in the Bible. He wrote to his Gentile friend, Theophilus (Luke 1:3; Acts 1:1), with a different emphasis from the other writers of the New Testament who all grew up steeped in Israel's traditions.*

*Luke the historian describes Jesus' central place in human events. Jesus is the saviour of the whole world. No one is excluded from God's offer of salvation in Jesus. The poor, despised and outcasts (such as Gentiles) are especially invited into the kingdom of God. Luke gives a clear, ordered account of the spread of God's kingdom in the ministry of Jesus (Luke's Gospel) and in the early church (The Acts of the Apostles).*

*Luke the traveller makes 'journey' a strong theme in both his books. He tells of events along the way, on the road. This especially applies to Jesus' final journey to Jerusalem (9:51, 57). That last journey began after Peter's declaration that Jesus was the Messiah, which Jesus explained in terms of his death and resurrection (9:20-22), and after Jesus' glory was seen at the transfiguration where Moses and Elijah talked with Jesus about his coming departure (9:28-31).*

*Luke the missionary, who often accompanied Paul, tells of the mighty power of the Holy Spirit, first in Jesus (3:21-22; 4:18-19), then in his followers (9:1-2 and 10:1,9), and then in the church's missionary expansion (24:46-49). Luke makes many references to the Holy Spirit in both his gospel and The Acts of the Apostles.*

*Luke the doctor (Colossians 4:14) shows Jesus' compassion and healing power for all who came to him. His gospel abounds with stories of Jesus' care for people. He includes many accounts of Jesus' compassion for the poor and for outcasts.*

*Luke the evangelist, tells of Jesus' saving power and includes some of the most famous parables which summarise the good news of God's kingdom. Parables of the prodigal son, the lost coin, the good Samaritan, the rich man and Lazarus, and the rich fool are unique to Luke's evangelism story. So are the accounts of the Samaritan leper, the sinful woman who anointed Jesus' feet, and Zacchaeus. These were despised people who responded to Jesus.*

*Bibles with section headings containing cross references, as in the Good News Bible and New Revised Standard Version, help you locate the passages unique to Luke. They have no cross references! Those passages give a feel for Luke's emphasis in telling the good news about the kingdom of God.*

*Luke records the prophecies by Mary fulfilled in Jesus and by Zechariah fulfilled in John the Baptist, both of these declared in Zechariah and Elizabeth's home in Jerusalem. Luke also gives us Simeon's prophecy upon seeing Jesus, the Lord's Messiah.*

*Mary's prophecy, the Magnificat.*

And Mary said,  
'My soul magnifies the Lord,  
47 and my spirit rejoices in God my Saviour, [Habakkuk 3:18]

<sup>48</sup> for he has looked with favour on the lowliness of his servant.  
Surely, from now on all generations will call me blessed; [Psalm 138:6]  
<sup>49</sup> for the Mighty One has done great things for me, [Ps 71:19; 126:2-3]  
and holy is his name. [Psalm 111:9]  
<sup>50</sup> His mercy is for those who fear him  
from generation to generation. [Psalm 103:17]  
<sup>51</sup> He has shown strength with his arm; [Psalm 98:1; 118:15]  
he has scattered the proud in the thoughts of their hearts.  
<sup>52</sup> He has brought down the powerful from their thrones,  
and lifted up the lowly; [1 Samuel 2:7-8]  
<sup>53</sup> he has filled the hungry with good things,  
and sent the rich away empty.  
<sup>54</sup> He has helped his servant Israel, [Isaiah 51:8]  
in remembrance of his mercy, [Jeremiah 31:3]  
<sup>55</sup> according to the promise he made to our ancestors, [Genesis 17:19]  
to Abraham and to his descendants for ever.' [Genesis 17:7]  
(Luke 1:46-55; see 1 Samuel 2:1-10)

*Zechariah's prophecy at the birth of his son John the Baptist.*

Then his father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and spoke this prophecy:

<sup>68</sup> 'Blessed be the Lord God of Israel, [1 Kings 1:48; Exodus 3:16]  
for he has looked favourably on his people and redeemed them.  
<sup>69</sup> He has raised up a mighty saviour for us [Psalm 132:17]  
in the house of his servant David,  
<sup>70</sup> as he spoke through the mouth of his holy prophets from of old,  
<sup>71</sup> that we would be saved from our enemies  
and from the hand of all who hate us.  
<sup>72</sup> Thus he has shown the mercy promised to our ancestors,  
and has remembered his holy covenant, [Leviticus 26:42]  
<sup>73</sup> the oath that he swore to our ancestor Abraham,  
to grant us <sup>74</sup> that we, being rescued from the hands of our enemies,  
might serve him without fear, <sup>75</sup> in holiness and righteousness  
before him all our days. [Genesis 12:3; 22:16-18]  
<sup>76</sup> And you, child, will be called the prophet of the Most High;  
for you will go before the Lord to prepare his ways, [Isaiah 40:3]  
<sup>77</sup> to give knowledge of salvation to his people  
by the forgiveness of their sins. [Isaiah 53:11]  
<sup>78</sup> By the tender mercy of our God,  
the dawn from on high will break upon us,  
<sup>79</sup> to give light to those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death,  
to guide our feet into the way of peace.' [Isaiah 9:2]  
(Luke 1:67-79)

*The dedication of the baby Jesus in the Temple.*

When the time came for their purification according to the law of Moses, they brought him up to Jerusalem to present him to the Lord <sup>23</sup> (as it is written in the law of the Lord, 'Every firstborn male shall be designated as holy to the Lord').  
(Luke 2:22-23; see Deuteronomy 18:4)

## *The Lion of Judah*

### *The priest Simeon's prophecy at the dedication of Jesus in the Temple.*

Simeon took him in his arms and praised God, saying,  
29 'Master, now you are dismissing your servant in peace,  
according to your word;  
30 for my eyes have seen your salvation, [Isaiah 52:10]  
31 which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples,  
32 a light for revelation to the Gentiles [Isaiah 42:6]  
and for glory to your people Israel.' (Luke 2:28-32)  
As it is written in the book of the words of the prophet Isaiah,  
'The voice of one crying out in the wilderness:  
"Prepare the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight.  
Every valley shall be filled,  
and every mountain and hill shall be made low,  
and the crooked shall be made straight,  
and the rough ways made smooth;  
and all flesh shall see the salvation of God."  
(Luke 3:4-6; see Matthew 3:3; Mark 1:1-3; Isaiah 40:3-5)

### *Jesus returned to Nazareth at the beginning of his public ministry.*

He went to Nazareth, where he had been brought up, and on the Sabbath day he went into the synagogue, as was his custom. He stood up to read, <sup>17</sup> and the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. Unrolling it, he found the place where it is written:  
<sup>18</sup> "The Spirit of the Lord is on me,  
because he has anointed me  
to proclaim good news to the poor.  
He has sent me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners  
and recovery of sight for the blind,  
to set the oppressed free,  
<sup>19</sup> to proclaim the year of the Lord's favour.'  
<sup>20</sup> Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant and sat down. The eyes of everyone in the synagogue were fastened on him. <sup>21</sup> He began by saying to them, 'Today this scripture is fulfilled in your hearing.'  
(Luke 4:18-19 NIV; see Isaiah 61:1-2)

### *Jesus explained the ministry of John the Baptist.*

This is the one about whom it is written,  
"See, I am sending my messenger ahead of you,  
who will prepare your way before you."  
(Luke 7:27; see Isaiah 40:3; Malachi 3:1)



*Holy Week: the last week of the earthly life of Jesus.*

'Blessed is the king  
who comes in the name of the Lord!  
Peace in heaven,  
and glory in the highest heaven!  
(Luke 19:38; see Matthew 21:9; Mark 11:10-11; Psalm 118:26)

Then they will begin to say to the mountains, "Fall on us"; and to the hills, "Cover us."  
(Luke 23:30; see Hosea10:8)

Then Jesus, crying with a loud voice, said, 'Father, into your hands I commend my spirit.' (Luke 23:46; see Psalm 31:5)

*Luke also has prophetic passages included in Matthew and Mark as above:*

You will indeed listen, but never understand, ...  
(Matthew 13:14-15; see Mark 4:11-12; Luke 8:10; Isaiah 6:9-10)

The stone that the builders rejected ...  
(Matthew 21:42; see Mark 12:10-11; Luke 20:17; Psalm 118:22-23)

'What do you think of the Messiah? Whose son is he?' ...  
(Matthew 22:42-44; see Mark 12:36-37; Luke 20:42-44; Psalm 110:1)

## ***John declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture***

*John, an eye-witness to the ministry of Jesus, belonged to the inner circle of disciples with his brother James and with Peter the natural leader. John may have been the youngest of the disciples, uniquely remembered as the disciple whom Jesus loved.*

*J B Phillips concludes his translation of the closing verses in John's Gospel this way:*

All the above was written by an eye-witness. Now it is this same disciple who is hereby giving his testimony to these things and has written them down. We know that his testimony is reliable. Of course, there are many other things which Jesus did, and I suppose that if each one were written down in detail, there would not be room in the whole world for all the books that would have to be written.

*(John 21:24-25 JBP)*

*Throughout his gospel John emphasized that he recorded what he had seen and heard. He states early in the Gospel that he with others witnessed the life of Jesus the Christ, the Logos – the living Word of God. He declares, "We beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father" (John 1:14).*

*John describes how he was there at the crucifixion witnessing that stupendous, agonizing death, "And he who has seen has testified, and his testimony is true; and he knows that he is telling the truth, so that you may believe" (John 19:35). Here again he underlines the main purpose of writing his Gospel as he does in his conclusion before the Appendix of Chapter 21:*

And truly Jesus did many other signs in the presence of His disciples, which are not written in this book; but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in His name.

*(John 20:30-31)*

*John's purpose is evangelistic – "that you may believe".*

*John's intimate, personal Gospel story transcends time and space to show us his living Lord, the Son of God, revealed in human flesh, living among us, full of grace and truth, "for God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have everlasting life" (John 3:16).*

*These verses, unique to John's writings, declare how Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

The Passover of the Jews was near, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. <sup>14</sup> In the temple he found people selling cattle, sheep, and doves, and the money-changers seated at their tables. <sup>15</sup> Making a whip of cords, he drove all of them out of the temple, both the sheep and the cattle. He also poured out the coins of the money-changers and overturned their tables. <sup>16</sup> He told those who were selling the doves, "Take these things out of here! Stop making my Father's house a market-place!" <sup>17</sup> His disciples remembered that it was written, "Zeal for your house will consume me." (John 2:13-17; see Psalm 69:9)

And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in him may have eternal life.  
(John 3:14-15; see Numbers 21:9)

Your ancestor Abraham rejoiced that he would see my day; he saw it and was glad.  
(John 8:56; see Hebrews 11:13)

“Hosanna! ‘Blessed is He who comes in the name of the LORD!’ The King of Israel!” ...  
Look, your king is coming, sitting on a donkey’s colt!  
(John 12:13, 15; see Psalm 118:26; Zechariah 9:9)

It was to fulfil the word that is written in their law, “They hated me without a cause”  
(John 15:25; see Psalm 35:19; 69:4).

This was to fulfil what the scripture says, ‘They divided my clothes among themselves, and for my clothing they cast lots’  
(John 19:24; see Psalm 22:18)

These things occurred so that the scripture might be fulfilled, ‘None of his bones shall be broken.’<sup>37</sup> And again another passage of scripture says, ‘They will look on the one whom they have pierced.’  
(John 19:36-37; see Psalm 34:20; 22:16; Zechariah 12:10)

They did not understand the scripture, that he must rise from the dead  
(John 20:9; see Psalm 16:10).

*John’s apocalyptic book The Revelation also shows how Jesus fulfilled Scripture in his eternal victory and reign. Here are some examples.*

Grace to you and peace from him who is and who was and who is to come, and from the seven spirits who are before his throne,<sup>5</sup> and from Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To him who loves us and freed us from our sins by his blood,<sup>6</sup> and made us to be a kingdom, priests serving his God and Father, to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.  
(Revelation 1:4-6; see Isaiah 55:4; Psalm 89:27)

Behold, He is coming with clouds, and every eye will see Him, even they who pierced Him. And all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of Him. Even so, Amen.  
(Revelation 1:7; see Zechariah 12:10)

‘Holy, holy, holy,  
the Lord God the Almighty,  
who was and is and is to come.’  
(Revelation 4:8; see Isaiah 6:3)

See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals.  
(Revelation 5:5; see Genesis 49:10; Psalm 110:1)

‘You are worthy to take the scroll  
and to open its seals,

## *The Lion of Judah*

for you were slaughtered and by your blood you ransomed for God  
saints from every tribe and language and people and nation;  
<sup>10</sup> you have made them to be a kingdom and priests serving our God,  
and they will reign on earth.'  
(Revelation 5:9-10; see Exodus 19:6; Psalm 2:7-8; Isaiah 53:5-6; 61:6)

'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord  
and of his Messiah,  
and he will reign for ever and ever.'  
(Revelation 11:15; see Exodus 15:18)

And they sing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb:

'Great and amazing are your deeds,  
Lord God the Almighty!  
Just and true are your ways,  
King of the nations!  
<sup>4</sup> Lord, who will not fear  
and glorify your name?  
For you alone are holy.  
All nations will come  
and worship before you,  
for your judgements have been revealed.'  
(Revelation 15:3-4; see Exodus 15:1-18)

On his robe and on his thigh he has a name inscribed,  
'King of kings and Lord of lords'.  
(Revelation 19:16; see Daniel 2:47)

## ***The church declared that Jesus fulfilled Scripture***

*The Gospel of Luke and The Acts of the Apostles give us an astounding history in two volumes – the story of Jesus and his church. Luke, “the beloved physician” (Colossians 4:14), often travelled with Paul in their pioneering missionary journeys. Luke gives us a concise preface in the beginning of his writings, and then begins the second part of his story with a short introduction linking the two.*

*Luke’s own preface reads: “The Author to Theophilus: Many writers have undertaken to draw up an account of the events that have happened among us, following the traditions handed down to us by the original eyewitnesses and servants of the Gospel. And so I in my turn, your Excellency, as one who has gone over the whole course of these events in detail, have decided to write a connected narrative for you, so as to give you authentic knowledge about the matters of which you have been informed” (Luke 1:1-4, NEB).*

*Continuing his connected narrative, he commences part two with a sentence linking both: “In the first part of my work, Theophilus, I wrote of all that Jesus did and taught from the beginning until the day when, after giving instructions through the Holy Spirit to the apostles whom He had chosen, He was taken up into heaven.” (Acts 1:1-2, NEB).*

*In his preface to the combined work, the author:*

- ❖ *revealed his subject: Jesus and his church;*
- ❖ *gave the sources of his information: eyewitnesses and ministers;*
- ❖ *described his method: accurate tracing of the events, writing them in order;*
- ❖ *and declared the purpose: giving certainty to his reader.*

*What a great story! Luke traces the amazing growth of Jesus’ church from its beginnings in Jerusalem to its impact throughout the Roman Empire.*

*This story of the Acts of the Holy Spirit continues today through the same Spirit of God. It fulfils Jesus’ last promise: You will receive power then the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses ... to the ends of the earth (Acts 1:8).*

*These verses from The Acts of the Apostles, and from some of the epistles, also tell how Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

*Peter, preaching on the Day of Pentecost and speaking to the religious leaders and preaching in Caesarea, showed how Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

- <sup>25</sup> For David says concerning him,  
“I saw the Lord always before me,  
for he is at my right hand so that I will not be shaken;  
<sup>26</sup> therefore my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced;  
moreover, my flesh will live in hope.  
<sup>27</sup> For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,  
or let your Holy One experience corruption.  
<sup>28</sup> You have made known to me the ways of life;  
you will make me full of gladness with your presence.”  
(Acts 2:25-28; see Psalm 16:8-11)

## *The Lion of Judah*

In this way God fulfilled what he had foretold through all the prophets, that his Messiah would suffer. <sup>19</sup> Repent therefore, and turn to God so that your sins may be wiped out, <sup>20</sup> so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that he may send the Messiah appointed for you, that is, Jesus, <sup>21</sup> who must remain in heaven until the time of universal restoration that God announced long ago through his holy prophets. <sup>22</sup> Moses said, “The Lord your God will raise up for you from your own people a prophet like me. You must listen to whatever he tells you. <sup>23</sup> And it will be that everyone who does not listen to that prophet will be utterly rooted out from the people.” <sup>24</sup> And all the prophets, as many as have spoken, from Samuel and those after him, also predicted these days. <sup>25</sup> You are the descendants of the prophets and of the covenant that God gave to your ancestors, saying to Abraham, “And in your descendants all the families of the earth shall be blessed.” <sup>26</sup> When God raised up his servant, he sent him first to you, to bless you by turning each of you from your wicked ways’ (Acts 3:18-26; see Deuteronomy 18:15, 18, 19; Genesis 22:18; 26:4; 28:14).

This Jesus is “the stone that was rejected by you, the builders; it has become the cornerstone.” (Acts 4:11; see Psalm 118:22-23)

All the prophets testify about him that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name.’ (Acts 10:43)

*The early church drew on the Messianic Scriptures in their praying.*

‘Sovereign Lord, who made the heaven and the earth, the sea, and everything in them, <sup>25</sup> it is you who said by the Holy Spirit through our ancestor David, your servant:

“Why did the Gentiles rage,

and the peoples imagine vain things?

<sup>26</sup> The kings of the earth took their stand,

and the rulers have gathered together

against the Lord and against his Messiah.” (Acts 4:24-26; see Psalm 2:1-2)

*Philip explained the Scriptures about the Messiah to the Ethiopian.*

Now the passage of the scripture that he was reading was this:

‘Like a sheep he was led to the slaughter,

and like a lamb silent before its shearer,

so he does not open his mouth.

<sup>33</sup> In his humiliation justice was denied him.

Who can describe his generation?

For his life is taken away from the earth.’

<sup>34</sup> The eunuch asked Philip, ‘About whom, may I ask you, does the prophet say this, about himself or about someone else?’ <sup>35</sup> Then Philip began to speak, and starting with this scripture, he proclaimed to him the good news about Jesus. (Acts 8:32-35; see Isaiah 53:7-8)

*Paul and others often showed from Scripture that Jesus was the Messiah.*

And we bring you the good news that what God promised to our ancestors <sup>33</sup> he has fulfilled for us, their children, by raising Jesus; as also it is written in the second psalm,

“You are my Son;

today I have begotten you.” [Palm 2:7]

<sup>34</sup> As to his raising him from the dead, no more to return to corruption, he has spoken in this way,

“I will give you the holy promises made to David.” [Psalm 89:28; Isaiah 55:3]

<sup>35</sup> Therefore he has also said in another psalm,

“You will not let your Holy One experience corruption.” [Psalm 16:10]

<sup>36</sup> For David, after he had served the purpose of God in his own generation, died, was laid beside his ancestors, and experienced corruption; <sup>37</sup> but he whom God raised up experienced no corruption. <sup>38</sup> Let it be known to you therefore, my brothers, that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you; <sup>39</sup> by this Jesus everyone who believes is set free from all those sins from which you could not be freed by the law of Moses. <sup>40</sup> Beware, therefore, that what the prophets said does not happen to you:

<sup>41</sup> “Look, you scoffers!

Be amazed and perish,  
for in your days I am doing a work,  
a work that you will never believe,  
even if someone tells you.” [Habakkuk 1:5]

(Acts 13:32-41)

This agrees with the words of the prophets, as it is written,

<sup>16</sup> “After this I will return,

and I will rebuild the dwelling of David, which has fallen;

from its ruins I will rebuild it,

and I will set it up,

<sup>17</sup> so that all other peoples may seek the Lord—

even all the Gentiles over whom my name has been called.

Thus says the Lord, who has been making these things

<sup>18</sup> known from long ago.” (Acts 15:15-18; see Amos 9:11-12)

As was his custom, Paul went into the synagogue, and on three Sabbath days he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, <sup>3</sup> explaining and proving that the Messiah had to suffer and rise from the dead. ‘This Jesus I am proclaiming to you is the Messiah,’ he said. (Acts 17:2-3 NIV)

Now there came to Ephesus a Jew named Apollos, a native of Alexandria. He was an eloquent man, well-versed in the scriptures. <sup>25</sup> He had been instructed in the Way of the Lord; and he spoke with burning enthusiasm and taught accurately the things concerning Jesus, though he knew only the baptism of John.

(Acts 18:28)

To this day I have had help from God, and so I stand here, testifying to both small and great, saying nothing but what the prophets and Moses said would take place: <sup>23</sup> that the Messiah must suffer, and that, by being the first to rise from the dead, he would proclaim light both to our people and to the Gentiles.’ (Acts 26:22-23)

From morning until evening he explained the matter to them, testifying to the kingdom of God and trying to convince them about Jesus both from the law of Moses and from the prophets. (Acts 28:23)

## *The Lion of Judah*

*Paul and other New Testament authors wrote about Jesus being the Messiah, both Christ and Lord.*

Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God— <sup>2</sup>the gospel he promised beforehand through his prophets in the Holy Scriptures <sup>3</sup>regarding his Son, who as to his earthly life was a descendant of David, <sup>4</sup>and who through the Spirit of holiness was appointed the Son of God in power by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord. (Romans 1:1-4 NIV)

They are Israelites, and to them belong the adoption, the glory, the covenants, the giving of the law, the worship, and the promises; <sup>5</sup>to them belong the patriarchs, and from them, according to the flesh, comes the Messiah, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen. (Romans 9:4-5)

They have stumbled over the stumbling-stone, <sup>33</sup>as it is written,  
‘See, I am laying in Zion a stone that will make people stumble,  
a rock that will make them fall,  
and whoever believes in him will not be put to shame.’  
(Romans 9:32-33; see Isaiah 8:14, 28:16)

For we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ.

<sup>11</sup> For it is written:

“As I live, says the LORD,  
Every knee shall bow to Me,  
And every tongue shall confess to God.”  
(Romans 14:10-11 NKJV; see Philippians 2:9-11; Isaiah 45:23)

And again, Isaiah says:

“There shall be a root of Jesse;  
And He who shall rise to reign over the Gentiles,  
In Him the Gentiles shall hope.” (Romans 15:12; see Isaiah 11:1-10)

So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are citizens with the saints and also members of the household of God, built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus himself as the cornerstone. (Ephesians 2:19-20; see Psalm 118:22-23)

For it stands in scripture: ‘See, I am laying in Zion a stone, a cornerstone chosen and precious; and whoever believes in him will not be put to shame.’  
(1 Peter 2:6; see Psalm 118:22-23)

All of these died in faith without having received the promises, but from a distance they saw and greeted them (Hebrews 11:13).



## ***Old Testament Prophecies fulfilled in Jesus***

*The Old Testament often points to the promised Messiah, God's Anointed King who will reign forever. These sample selections are a few of the messianic passages that find their ultimate fulfillment in Jesus.*

### ***Psalms***

Why do the nations rage,  
And the people plot a vain thing?  
2 The kings of the earth set themselves,  
And the rulers take counsel together,  
Against the LORD and against His Anointed, *saying*,  
3 "Let us break Their bonds in pieces  
And cast away Their cords from us."  
4 He who sits in the heavens shall laugh;  
The Lord shall hold them in derision.  
5 Then He shall speak to them in His wrath,  
And distress them in His deep displeasure:  
6 "Yet I have set My King  
On My holy hill of Zion."  
7 "I will declare the decree:  
The LORD has said to Me,  
'You *are* My Son,  
Today I have begotten You. [Hebrews 1:5]  
8 Ask of Me, and I will give You  
The nations *for* Your inheritance,  
And the ends of the earth *for* Your possession.  
9 You shall break them with a rod of iron;  
You shall dash them to pieces like a potter's vessel."  
10 Now therefore, be wise, O kings;  
Be instructed, you judges of the earth.  
11 Serve the LORD with fear,  
And rejoice with trembling.  
12 Kiss the Son, lest He be angry,  
And you perish *in* the way,  
When His wrath is kindled but a little.  
Blessed *are* all those who put their trust in Him.  
(Psalm 2 NKV)

## The Lion of Judah

O LORD, our Sovereign,  
how majestic is your name in all the earth!  
You have set your glory above the heavens.  
2 Out of the mouths of babes and infants [Matthew 21:15-16]  
you have founded a bulwark because of your foes,  
to silence the enemy and the avenger.  
3 When I look at your heavens, the work of your fingers,  
the moon and the stars that you have established;  
4 what are human beings that you are mindful of them,  
mortals that you care for them?  
5 Yet you have made them a little lower than God, [Eloheim]  
and crowned them with glory and honour.  
6 You have given them dominion over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under their feet, [Hebrews 2:6-8]  
7 all sheep and oxen,  
and also the beasts of the field,  
8 the birds of the air, and the fish of the sea,  
whatever passes along the paths of the seas.  
9 O LORD, our Sovereign,  
how majestic is your name in all the earth!  
(Psalm 8)

My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? [Matthew 27:46]  
*Why are You so far from helping Me,  
And from the words of My groaning?*  
2 O My God, I cry in the daytime, but You do not hear;  
And in the night season, and am not silent.  
3 But You *are* holy,  
Enthroned in the praises of Israel.  
4 Our fathers trusted in You;  
They trusted, and You delivered them.  
5 They cried to You, and were delivered;  
They trusted in You, and were not ashamed.  
6 But I *am* a worm, and no man;  
A reproach of men, and despised by the people.  
7 All those who see Me ridicule Me; [Matthew 27:39; Luke 23:35]  
They shoot out the lip, they shake the head, *saying*,  
8 "He trusted in the LORD, let Him rescue Him;  
Let Him deliver Him, since He delights in Him!" [Matthew 27:43]  
9 But You *are* He who took Me out of the womb;  
You made Me trust *while* on My mother's breasts.  
10 I was cast upon You from birth.  
From My mother's womb  
You *have been* My God.  
11 Be not far from Me,  
For trouble *is* near;  
For *there is* none to help.  
12 Many bulls have surrounded Me;  
Strong *bulls* of Bashan have encircled Me.

13 They gape at Me *with* their mouths,  
Like a raging and roaring lion.  
14 I am poured out like water,  
And all My bones are out of joint;  
My heart is like wax;  
It has melted within Me.  
15 My strength is dried up like a potsherd,  
And My tongue clings to My jaws; [John 19:28]  
You have brought Me to the dust of death.  
16 For dogs have surrounded Me;  
The congregation of the wicked has enclosed Me.  
They pierced My hands and My feet; [John 20:27]  
17 I can count all My bones.  
They look *and* stare at Me.  
18 They divide My garments among them,  
And for My clothing they cast lots. [Matthew 27:35; John 19:23-24]  
19 But You, O LORD, do not be far from Me;  
O My Strength, hasten to help Me!  
20 Deliver Me from the sword,  
My precious *life* from the power of the dog.  
21 Save Me from the lion's mouth  
And from the horns of the wild oxen!  
You have answered Me.  
22 I will declare Your name to My brethren;  
In the midst of the assembly I will praise You. [Hebrews 2:12]  
23 You who fear the LORD, praise Him!  
All you descendants of Jacob, glorify Him,  
And fear Him, all you offspring of Israel!  
24 For He has not despised nor abhorred the affliction of the afflicted;  
Nor has He hidden His face from Him;  
But when He cried to Him, He heard.  
25 My praise *shall be* of You in the great assembly;  
I will pay My vows before those who fear Him.  
26 The poor shall eat and be satisfied;  
Those who seek Him will praise the LORD.  
Let your heart live forever!  
27 All the ends of the world  
Shall remember and turn to the LORD,  
And all the families of the nations  
Shall worship before You.  
28 For the kingdom *is* the LORD's,  
And He rules over the nations.  
29 All the prosperous of the earth  
Shall eat and worship;  
All those who go down to the dust  
Shall bow before Him,  
Even he who cannot keep himself alive.  
30 A posterity shall serve Him.  
It will be recounted of the Lord to the *next* generation,  
31 They will come and declare His righteousness to a people who will be born,  
That He has done *this*. (Psalm 22 NKJV)

## The Lion of Judah

*This psalm, and Psalm 69, are the most quoted psalms in the New Testament.*

The LORD is my shepherd;

I shall not want.

<sup>2</sup> He makes me to lie down in green pastures;

He leads me beside the still waters.

<sup>3</sup> He restores my soul;

He leads me in the paths of righteousness

For His name's sake.

<sup>4</sup> Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death,

I will fear no evil;

For You *are* with me;

Your rod and Your staff, they comfort me.

<sup>5</sup> You prepare a table before me in the presence of my enemies;

You anoint my head with oil;

My cup runs over.

<sup>6</sup> Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me

All the days of my life;

And I will dwell in the house of the LORD

Forever.

(Psalm 23. *The Shepherd Psalm.* See John 10:11-15)

The earth is the LORD's and all that is in it,  
the world, and those who live in it;

<sup>2</sup> for he has founded it on the seas,  
and established it on the rivers.

<sup>3</sup> Who shall ascend the hill of the LORD?

And who shall stand in his holy place?

<sup>4</sup> Those who have clean hands and pure hearts,  
who do not lift up their souls to what is false,  
and do not swear deceitfully.

<sup>5</sup> They will receive blessing from the LORD,  
and vindication from the God of their salvation.

<sup>6</sup> Such is the company of those who seek him,  
who seek the face of the God of Jacob. *Selah*

<sup>7</sup> Lift up your heads, O gates!  
and be lifted up, O ancient doors!  
that the King of glory may come in.

<sup>8</sup> Who is the King of glory?  
The LORD, strong and mighty,  
the LORD, mighty in battle.

<sup>9</sup> Lift up your heads, O gates!  
and be lifted up, O ancient doors!  
that the King of glory may come in.

<sup>10</sup> Who is this King of glory?  
The LORD of hosts,  
he is the King of glory. *Selah*

(Psalm 24)

Save me, O God!

For the waters have come up to *my* neck.

<sup>2</sup> I sink in deep mire,

Where *there is* no standing;

I have come into deep waters,

Where the floods overflow me.

<sup>3</sup> I am weary with my crying;

My throat is dry;

My eyes fail while I wait for my God.

<sup>4</sup> Those who hate me without a cause [John 15:24]

Are more than the hairs of my head;

They are mighty who would destroy me,

*Being* my enemies wrongfully;

Though I have stolen nothing,

I *still* must restore *it*.

<sup>5</sup> O God, You know my foolishness;

And my sins are not hidden from You.

<sup>6</sup> Let not those who wait for You, O Lord GOD of hosts,  
be ashamed because of me;

Let not those who seek You be confounded because of me, O God of Israel.

<sup>7</sup> Because for Your sake I have borne reproach;

Shame has covered my face.

<sup>8</sup> I have become a stranger to my brothers,

And an alien to my mother's children;

<sup>9</sup> Because zeal for Your house has eaten me up, [John 2:17]

And the reproaches of those who reproach You have fallen on me. [Romans 15:3]

<sup>10</sup> When I wept *and chastened* my soul with fasting,

That became my reproach.

<sup>11</sup> I also made sackcloth my garment;

I became a byword to them.

<sup>12</sup> Those who sit in the gate speak against me,

And I *am* the song of the drunkards.

<sup>13</sup> But as for me, my prayer *is* to You,

O LORD, *in* the acceptable time;

O God, in the multitude of Your mercy,

Hear me in the truth of Your salvation.

<sup>14</sup> Deliver me out of the mire,

And let me not sink;

Let me be delivered from those who hate me,

And out of the deep waters.

<sup>15</sup> Let not the floodwater overflow me,

Nor let the deep swallow me up;

And let not the pit shut its mouth on me.

<sup>16</sup> Hear me, O LORD, for Your lovingkindness *is* good;

Turn to me according to the multitude of Your tender mercies.

<sup>17</sup> And do not hide Your face from Your servant,

For I am in trouble;

Hear me speedily.

<sup>18</sup> Draw near to my soul, *and* redeem it;

Deliver me because of my enemies.

## The Lion of Judah

19 You know my reproach, my shame, and my dishonor;  
My adversaries *are* all before You.  
20 Reproach has broken my heart,  
And I am full of heaviness;  
I looked *for someone* to take pity, but *there was* none;  
And for comforters, but I found none.  
21 They also gave me gall for my food,  
And for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink. [Matthew 27:48]  
22 Let their table become a snare before them,  
And their well-being a trap.  
23 Let their eyes be darkened, so that they do not see;  
And make their loins shake continually.  
24 Pour out Your indignation upon them,  
And let Your wrathful anger take hold of them.  
25 Let their dwelling place be desolate;  
Let no one live in their tents. [Acts 1:16-20]  
26 For they persecute the *ones* You have struck,  
And talk of the grief of those You have wounded. [Isaiah 53:5]  
27 Add iniquity to their iniquity,  
And let them not come into Your righteousness.  
28 Let them be blotted out of the book of the living,  
And not be written with the righteous.  
29 But I *am* poor and sorrowful;  
Let Your salvation, O God, set me up on high.  
30 I will praise the name of God with a song,  
And will magnify Him with thanksgiving.  
31 *This* also shall please the LORD better than an ox *or* bull,  
Which has horns and hooves.  
32 The humble shall see *this and* be glad;  
And you who seek God, your hearts shall live.  
33 For the LORD hears the poor,  
And does not despise His prisoners.  
34 Let heaven and earth praise Him,  
The seas and everything that moves in them.  
35 For God will save Zion  
And build the cities of Judah,  
That they may dwell there and possess it.  
36 Also, the descendants of His servants shall inherit it,  
And those who love His name shall dwell in it.  
(Psalm 69)

*This psalm, and Psalm 22, are the most quoted psalms in the New Testament.*

*The Reign of Jesus*

The LORD said to my Lord,  
“Sit at My right hand, [Mt 22:44; Mark 12:36; Luke 20:42;  
Till I make Your enemies Your footstool.” Acts 2:34-35; Hebrews 10:13]  
The LORD shall send the rod of Your strength out of Zion.  
Rule in the midst of Your enemies!  
<sup>3</sup>Your people *shall be* volunteers  
In the day of Your power;  
In the beauties of holiness, from the womb of the morning,  
You have the dew of Your youth.  
<sup>4</sup>The LORD has sworn  
And will not relent,  
“You *are* a priest forever  
According to the order of Melchizedek.” [Hebrews 5:6; 6:19-7:28]  
<sup>5</sup>The Lord *is* at Your right hand;  
He shall execute kings in the day of His wrath.  
<sup>6</sup>He shall judge among the nations,  
He shall fill *the places* with dead bodies,  
He shall execute the heads of many countries.  
<sup>7</sup>He shall drink of the brook by the wayside;  
Therefore He shall lift up the head.  
(Psalm 110:1-7 NKJV, *quoted 7 times in the New Testament*)

Open to me the gates of righteousness;  
I will go through them,  
*And* I will praise the LORD.  
<sup>20</sup>This is the gate of the LORD,  
Through which the righteous shall enter. [John 10:7-9]  
<sup>21</sup>I will praise You,  
For You have answered me,  
And have become my salvation.  
<sup>22</sup>The stone which the builders rejected  
Has become the chief cornerstone.  
<sup>23</sup>This was the LORD’s doing; [Matthew 21:42; Mark 12:10; Luke 20:17;  
It is marvellous in our eyes. Acts 4:11; Ephesians 2:20; 1 Peter 2:7].  
<sup>24</sup>This *is* the day the LORD has made;  
We will rejoice and be glad in it.  
<sup>25</sup>Save now, I pray, O LORD;  
O LORD, I pray, send now prosperity.  
<sup>26</sup>Blessed *is* he who comes in the name of the LORD! [Matthew 21:9;  
We have blessed you from the house of the LORD. Mark 11:10-11; Luke 19:38]  
<sup>27</sup>God *is* the LORD,  
And He has given us light;  
Bind the sacrifice with cords to the horns of the altar.  
<sup>28</sup>You *are* my God, and I will praise You;  
You *are* my God, I will exalt You.  
<sup>29</sup>Oh, give thanks to the LORD, for *He is* good!  
For His mercy *endures* forever.  
(Psalm 118)

## ***Prophets***

A shoot shall come out from the stock of Jesse,  
and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

<sup>2</sup> The spirit of the LORD shall rest on him,  
the spirit of wisdom and understanding,  
the spirit of counsel and might,  
the spirit of knowledge and the fear of the LORD.

<sup>3</sup> His delight shall be in the fear of the LORD.

He shall not judge by what his eyes see,  
or decide by what his ears hear;

<sup>4</sup> but with righteousness he shall judge the poor,  
and decide with equity for the meek of the earth;  
he shall strike the earth with the rod of his mouth,  
and with the breath of his lips he shall kill the wicked.

<sup>5</sup> Righteousness shall be the belt around his waist,  
and faithfulness the belt around his loins.

<sup>10</sup> On that day the root of Jesse shall stand as a signal to the peoples; the nations shall  
inquire of him, and his dwelling shall be glorious.

[Isaiah 11:1-5, 10; see Romans 15:12; Revelation 5:5]

For a child has been born for us,

a son given to us;

authority rests upon his shoulders;

and he is named

Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God,

Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.

<sup>7</sup> His authority shall grow continually,

and there shall be endless peace

for the throne of David and his kingdom.

He will establish and uphold it

with justice and with righteousness

from this time onwards and for evermore.

The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this.

[Isaiah 9:6-7]



## ***Isaiah's 'Servant Songs'***

Here is my servant, whom I uphold,  
my chosen, in whom my soul delights;  
I have put my spirit upon him;  
he will bring forth justice to the nations.  
<sup>2</sup> He will not cry or lift up his voice,  
or make it heard in the street;  
<sup>3</sup> a bruised reed he will not break,  
and a dimly burning wick he will not quench;  
he will faithfully bring forth justice.  
<sup>4</sup> He will not grow faint or be crushed  
until he has established justice in the earth;  
and the coastlands wait for his teaching.  
(Isaiah 42:1-4; see Matthew 12:17-21)

Listen to me, O coastlands,  
pay attention, you peoples from far away!  
The LORD called me before I was born,  
while I was in my mother's womb he named me.  
<sup>2</sup> He made my mouth like a sharp sword,  
in the shadow of his hand he hid me;  
he made me a polished arrow,  
in his quiver he hid me away.  
<sup>3</sup> And he said to me, 'You are my servant,  
Israel, in whom I will be glorified.'  
<sup>4</sup> But I said, 'I have laboured in vain,  
I have spent my strength for nothing and vanity;  
yet surely my cause is with the LORD,  
and my reward with my God.'  
<sup>5</sup> And now the LORD says,  
who formed me in the womb to be his servant,  
to bring Jacob back to him,  
and that Israel might be gathered to him,  
for I am honoured in the sight of the LORD,  
and my God has become my strength—  
<sup>6</sup> he says,  
'It is too light a thing that you should be my servant  
to raise up the tribes of Jacob  
and to restore the survivors of Israel;  
I will give you as a light to the nations,  
that my salvation may reach to the end of the earth.'  
(Isaiah 49:1-6)

The Lord GOD has given me  
the tongue of a teacher,  
that I may know how to sustain  
the weary with a word.

Morning by morning he awakens—  
wakens my ear  
to listen as those who are taught.  
5 The Lord GOD has opened my ear,  
and I was not rebellious,  
I did not turn backwards.  
6 I gave my back to those who struck me,  
and my cheeks to those who pulled out the beard;  
I did not hide my face  
from insult and spitting.  
7 The Lord GOD helps me;  
therefore I have not been disgraced;  
therefore I have set my face like flint,  
and I know that I shall not be put to shame;  
8 he who vindicates me is near.  
Who will contend with me?  
Let us stand up together.  
Who are my adversaries?  
Let them confront me.  
9 It is the Lord GOD who helps me;  
who will declare me guilty?  
All of them will wear out like a garment;  
the moth will eat them up.  
(Isaiah 50:4-9)

Just as there were many who were astonished at him  
—so marred was his appearance, beyond human semblance,  
and his form beyond that of mortals—  
15 so he shall startle many nations;  
kings shall shut their mouths because of him;  
for that which had not been told them they shall see,  
and that which they had not heard they shall contemplate.  
53 Who has believed what we have heard?  
And to whom has the arm of the LORD been revealed?  
2 For he grew up before him like a young plant,  
and like a root out of dry ground;  
he had no form or majesty that we should look at him,  
nothing in his appearance that we should desire him.  
3 He was despised and rejected by others;  
a man of suffering and acquainted with infirmity;  
and as one from whom others hide their faces  
he was despised, and we held him of no account.  
4 Surely he has borne our infirmities  
and carried our diseases; [Matthew 8:17]  
yet we accounted him stricken,  
struck down by God, and afflicted.  
5 But he was wounded for our transgressions,  
crushed for our iniquities;  
upon him was the punishment that made us whole,  
and by his bruises we are healed. [1 Peter 2:24]  
6 All we like sheep have gone astray; [1 Peter 2:25]

we have all turned to our own way,  
and the LORD has laid on him  
the iniquity of us all.  
<sup>7</sup> He was oppressed, and he was afflicted,  
yet he did not open his mouth;  
like a lamb that is led to the slaughter, [John 1:29; Acts 8:32-33]  
and like a sheep that before its shearers is silent,  
so he did not open his mouth. [1 Peter 2:23]  
<sup>8</sup> By a perversion of justice he was taken away.  
Who could have imagined his future?  
For he was cut off from the land of the living,  
stricken for the transgression of my people.  
<sup>9</sup> They made his grave with the wicked  
and his tomb with the rich, [Matthew 27:57-60]  
although he had done no violence,  
and there was no deceit in his mouth. [1 Peter 2:22]  
<sup>10</sup> Yet it was the will of the LORD to crush him with pain. [Acts 2:23]  
When you make his life an offering for sin,  
he shall see his offspring, and shall prolong his days;  
through him the will of the LORD shall prosper.  
<sup>11</sup> Out of his anguish he shall see light;  
he shall find satisfaction through his knowledge.  
The righteous one, my servant, shall make many righteous,  
and he shall bear their iniquities.  
<sup>12</sup> Therefore I will allot him a portion with the great,  
and he shall divide the spoil with the strong;  
because he poured out himself to death,  
and was numbered with the transgressors; [Luke 22:37]  
yet he bore the sin of many,  
and made intercession for the transgressors. [Luke 23:34]  
(Isaiah 53:14 – 53:12)

*Isaiah 61 is sometimes included as a Servant Song.*

The spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me,  
because the LORD has anointed me;  
he has sent me to bring good news to the oppressed,  
to bind up the broken-hearted,  
to proclaim liberty to the captives,  
and release to the prisoners;  
<sup>2</sup> to proclaim the year of the LORD's favour,  
and the day of vengeance of our God;  
to comfort all who mourn;  
<sup>3</sup> to provide for those who mourn in Zion—  
to give them a garland instead of ashes,  
the oil of gladness instead of mourning,  
the mantle of praise instead of a faint spirit.  
They will be called oaks of righteousness,  
the planting of the LORD, to display his glory.  
(Isaiah 61:1-3; see Luke 4:18-19)

## ***Other Prophets***

*Many prophets told of the coming Kingdom that would last forever.*

"I was watching in the night visions,  
And behold, *One* like the Son of Man,  
Coming with the clouds of heaven! [Matthew 24:30; 26:64; Mark 14:62]  
He came to the Ancient of Days,  
And they brought Him near before Him.  
<sup>14</sup> Then to Him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom,  
That all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him.  
His dominion *is* an everlasting dominion, [Daniel 4:3; 2 Peter 1:11]  
Which shall not pass away,  
And His kingdom *the one*  
Which shall not be destroyed.  
(Daniel 7:13-14 NKJV)

Now listen, Joshua, high priest, you and your colleagues who sit before you! For they are an omen of things to come: I am going to bring my servant the Branch. <sup>9</sup> For on the stone that I have set before Joshua, on a single stone with seven facets, I will engrave its inscription, says the LORD of hosts, and I will remove the guilt of this land in a single day. <sup>10</sup> On that day, says the LORD of hosts, you shall invite each other to come under your vine and fig tree.'  
(Zechariah 3:8-10)

Thus says the LORD of hosts: Here is a man whose name is Branch: for he shall branch out in his place, and he shall build the temple of the LORD. <sup>13</sup> It is he that shall build the temple of the LORD; he shall bear royal honour, and shall sit and rule on his throne. There shall be a priest by his throne, with peaceful understanding between the two of them.  
(Zechariah 6:12-13)

## Summary

***Then he said to them, ‘Oh, how foolish you are, and how slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have declared! <sup>26</sup> Was it not necessary that the Messiah should suffer these things and then enter into his glory?’ <sup>27</sup> Then beginning with Moses and all the prophets, he interpreted to them the things about himself in all the scriptures. ...***

***‘These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about me in the law of Moses, the prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.’ Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup> and he said to them, ‘Thus it is written, that the Messiah is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup> and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem.***

(Luke 24:25-27, 44-47)

## ***Prophecies Jesus Fulfilled***

<b>44 Prophecies Jesus Christ Fulfilled</b>			
	<b>Prophecies About Jesus</b>	<b>Old Testament Scripture</b>	<b>New Testament Fulfilment</b>
1	Messiah would be born of a woman.	<a href="#"><u>Genesis 3:15</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 1:20</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Galatians 4:4</u></a>
2	Messiah would be born in Bethlehem.	<a href="#"><u>Micah 5:2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 2:1</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Luke 2:4-6</u></a>
3	Messiah would be born of a virgin.	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 7:14</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 1:22-23</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Luke 1:26-31</u></a>
4	Messiah would come from the line of Abraham.	<a href="#"><u>Genesis 12:3</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Genesis 22:18</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 1:1</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Romans 9:5</u></a>
5	Messiah would be a descendant of Isaac.	<a href="#"><u>Genesis 17:19</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Genesis 21:12</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 3:34</u></a>
6	Messiah would be a descendant of Jacob.	<a href="#"><u>Numbers 24:17</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 1:2</u></a>
7	Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah.	<a href="#"><u>Genesis 49:10</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 3:33</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Hebrews 7:14</u></a>
8	Messiah would be heir to King David's throne.	<a href="#"><u>2 Samuel 7:12-13</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Isaiah 9:7</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 1:32-33</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Romans 1:3</u></a>
9	Messiah's throne will be anointed and eternal.	<a href="#"><u>Psalms 45:6-7</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Daniel 2:44</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 1:33</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Hebrews 1:8-12</u></a>
10	Messiah would be called Immanuel.	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 7:14</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 1:23</u></a>
11	Messiah would spend a season in Egypt.	<a href="#"><u>Hosea 11:1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 2:14-15</u></a>
12	A massacre of children would happen at Messiah's birthplace.	<a href="#"><u>Jeremiah 31:15</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 2:16-18</u></a>
13	A messenger would prepare the way for Messiah	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 40:3-5</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 3:3-6</u></a>
14	Messiah would be rejected by his own people.	<a href="#"><u>Psalms 69:8</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Isaiah 53:3</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>John 1:11</u></a> <a href="#"><u>John 7:5</u></a>
15	Messiah would be a prophet.	<a href="#"><u>Deuteronomy 18:15</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Acts 3:20-22</u></a>
16	Messiah would be preceded by Elijah.	<a href="#"><u>Malachi 4:5-6</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 11:13-14</u></a>
17	Messiah would be declared the Son of God.	<a href="#"><u>Psalms 2:7</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 3:16-17</u></a>
18	Messiah would be called a Nazarene.	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 11:1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 2:23</u></a>
19	Messiah would bring light to Galilee.	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 9:1-2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 4:13-16</u></a>
20	Messiah would speak in parables.	<a href="#"><u>Psalms 78:2-4</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Isaiah 6:9-10</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Matthew 13:10-15,34-35</u></a>
21	Messiah would be sent to heal the broken hearted.	<a href="#"><u>Isaiah 61:1-2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Luke 4:18-19</u></a>

*The Reign of Jesus*

22	Messiah would be a priest after the order of Melchizedek.	<u>Psalm 110:4</u>	<u>Hebrews 5:5-6</u>
23	Messiah would be called King.	<u>Psalm 2:6</u> <u>Zechariah 9:9</u>	<u>Matthew 27:37</u> <u>Mark 11:7-11</u>
24	Messiah would be praised by children.	<u>Psalm 8:2</u>	<u>Matthew 21:16</u>
25	Messiah would be betrayed.	<u>Psalm 41:9</u> <u>Zechariah 11:12-13</u>	<u>Luke 22:47-48</u> <u>Matthew 26:14-16</u>
26	Messiah's price: money would be used to buy a potter's field.	<u>Zechariah 11:12-13</u>	<u>Matthew 27:9-10</u>
27	Messiah would be falsely accused.	<u>Psalm 35:11</u>	<u>Mark 14:57-58</u>
28	Messiah would be silent before his accusers.	<u>Isaiah 53:7</u>	<u>Mark 15:4-5</u>
29	Messiah would be spat upon and struck.	<u>Isaiah 50:6</u>	<u>Matthew 26:67</u>
30	Messiah would be hated without cause.	<u>Psalm 35:19</u> <u>Psalm 69:4</u>	<u>John 15:24-25</u>
31	Messiah would be crucified with criminals.	<u>Isaiah 53:12</u>	<u>Matthew 27:38</u> <u>Mark 15:27-28</u>
32	Messiah would be given vinegar to drink.	<u>Psalm 69:21</u>	<u>Matthew 27:34</u> <u>John 19:28-30</u>
33	Messiah's hands and feet would be pierced.	<u>Psalm 22:16</u> <u>Zechariah 12:10</u>	<u>John 20:25-27</u>
34	Messiah would be mocked and ridiculed.	<u>Psalm 22:7-8</u>	<u>Luke 23:35</u>
35	Soldiers would gamble for Messiah's garments.	<u>Psalm 22:18</u>	<u>Luke 23:34</u> <u>Matthew 27:35-36</u>
36	Messiah's bones would not be broken.	<u>Exodus 12:46</u> <u>Psalm 34:20</u>	<u>John 19:33-36</u>
37	Messiah would be forsaken by God.	<u>Psalm 22:1</u>	<u>Matthew 27:46</u>
38	Messiah would pray for his enemies.	<u>Psalm 109:4</u>	<u>Luke 23:34</u>
39	Soldiers would pierce Messiah's side.	<u>Zechariah 12:10</u>	<u>John 19:34</u>
40	Messiah would be buried with the rich.	<u>Isaiah 53:9</u>	<u>Matthew 27:57-60</u>
41	Messiah would resurrect from the dead.	<u>Psalm 16:10</u> <u>Psalm 49:15</u>	<u>Matthew 28:2-7</u> <u>Acts 2:22-32</u>
42	Messiah would ascend to heaven.	<u>Psalm 24:7-10</u>	<u>Mark 16:19</u> <u>Luke 24:51</u>
43	Messiah would be seated at God's right hand.	<u>Psalm 68:18</u> <u>Psalm 110:1</u>	<u>Mark 16:19</u> <u>Matthew 22:44</u>
44	Messiah would be a sacrifice for sin.	<u>Isaiah 53:5-12</u>	<u>Romans 5:6-8</u>

Reference: About.com Christianity

Believe Religious Information Source: <http://mb-soft.com/believe/txh/proph.htm>:

***A list of 100 fulfilled prophecies***

<b>SUBJECT</b>	<b>OT Prophecy</b>	<b>NT Fulfilment</b>
As the Son of God	Ps 2:7	Lk 1:32,35
As the seed of the woman	Ge 3:15	Ga 4:4
As the seed of Abraham	Ge 17:7 22:18	Ga 3:16
As the seed of Isaac	Ge 21:12	Heb 11:17-19
As the seed of David	Ps 132:11 Jer 23:5	Ac 13:23 Ro 1:3
His coming at a set time	Ge 49:10 Da 9:24,25	Lk 2:1
His being born of a virgin	Isa 7:14	Mt 1:22,23 Lk 2:7
His being called Immanuel	Isa 7:14	Mt 1:22,23
His being born in Bethlehem of Judea	Mic 5:2	Mt 2:1 Lk 2:4-6
Great persons coming to adore him	Ps 72:10	Mt 2:1-11
The slaying of the children of Bethlehem	Jer 31:15	Mt 2:16-18
His being called out of Egypt	Ho 11:1	Mt 2:15
His being preceded by John the Baptist	Isa 40:3 Mal 3:1	Mt 3:1,3 Lk 1:17
His being anointed with the Spirit	Ps 45:7 Isa 11:2 61:1	Mt 3:16 Jn 3:34 Ac 10:38
His being a Prophet like to Moses	De 18:15-18	Ac 3:20-22
His being a Priest after the order of Melchizedek	Ps 110:4	Heb 5:5,6
His entering on his public ministry	Isa 61:1,2	Lk 4:16-21,43
His ministry commencing in Galilee	Isa 9:1,2	Mt 4:12-16,23
His entering publicly into Jerusalem	Zec 9:9	Mt 21:1-5
His coming into the temple	Hag 2:7,9 Mal 3:1	Mt 21:12 Lk 2:27-32 Jn 2:13-16
His poverty	Isa 53:2	Lk 6:3 Lk 9:58
His meekness and want of ostentatious	Isa 42:2	Mt 12:15,16,19
His tenderness and compassion	Isa 40:11 42:3	Mt 12:15,20 Heb 4:15
His being without guile	Isa 53:9	1Pe 2:22
His zeal	Ps 69:9	Jn 2:17
His preaching by parables	Ps 78:2	Mt 13:34,35
His working miracles	Isa 35:5,6	Mt 11:4-6 Jn 11:47
His bearing reproach	Ps 22:6 69:7,9,20	Ro 15:3
His being rejected by his brethren	Ps 69:8 Isa 63:3	Jn 1:11 7:3
His being a stone of stumbling to the Jews	Isa 8:14	Ro 9:32 1Pe 2:8
His being hated by the Jews	Ps 69:4 Isa 49:7	Jn 15:24,25
His being rejected by the Jewish rulers	Ps 118:22	Mt 21:42 Jn 7:48



*The Reign of Jesus*

That the Jews and Gentiles should combine against Him	Ps 2:1,2	Lk 23:12 Ac 4:27
His being betrayed by a friend	Ps 41:9 55:12-14	Jn 13:18,21
His disciples forsaking him	Zec 13:7	Mt 26:31,56
His being sold for thirty pieces silver	Zec 11:12	Mt 26:15
His price being given for the potter's field	Zec 11:13	Mt 27:7
The intensity of his sufferings	Ps 22:14,15	Lk 22:42,44
His sufferings being for others	Isa 53:4-6,12 Da 9:26	Mt 20:28
His patience and silence under suffering	Isa 53:7	Mt 26:63 27:12-14
His being smitten on the cheek	Mic 5:1	Mt 27:30
His visage being marred	Isa 52:14 53:3	Jn 19:5
His being spit on and scourged	Isa 50:6	Lk 14:65 Jn 19:1
His hands and feet being nailed to the cross	Ps 22:16	Jn 19:18 20:25
His being forsaken by God	Ps 22:1	Mt 27:46
His being mocked	Ps 22:7,8	Mt 27:39-44
Gall and vinegar being given him to drink	Ps 69:21	Mt 27:34
His garments being parted, and lots cast for his vesture	Ps 22:18	Mt 27:35
His being numbered with the transgressors	Isa 53:12	Lk 15:28
His intercession for His murderers	Isa 53:12	Lk 23:34
His Death	Isa 53:12	Mt 27:50
That a bone of him should not be broken	Ex 12:46 Ps 34:20	Jn 19:33,36
His being pierced	Zec 12:10	Jn 19:34,37
His being buried with the rich	Isa 53:9	Mt 27:57-60
His flesh not seeing corruption	Ps 16:10	Ac 2:31
His resurrection	Ps 16:10 Isa 26:19	Lk 24:6,31,34
His ascension	Ps 68:18	Lk 24:51 Ac 1:9
His sitting on the right hand of God	Ps 110:1	Heb 1:3
His exercising the priestly office in heaven	Zec 6:13	Ro 8:34
His being the chief corner-stone of the Church	Isa 28:16	1Pe 2:6,7
His being King in Zion	Ps 2:6	Lk 1:32 Jn 18:33-37
The conversion of the Gentiles to him	Isa 11:10 42:1	Mt 1:17,21 Jn 10:16 Ac 10:45,47
His righteous government	Ps 45:6,7	Jn 5:30 Re 19:11
His universal dominion	Ps 72:8 Da 7:14	Php 2:9,11
The perpetuity of his kingdom	Isa 9:7 Da 7:14	Lk 1:32,33



*Chapter 3*  
*The Life of Jesus*



*The Lion of Judah*

## ***The Life of Jesus***

*This chapter surveys Jesus' life using key verses from the Gospels.*

*It gives an overview of his life and includes reference to his death and resurrection. The next two chapters, **The Death of Jesus**, and **The Resurrection of Jesus**, give more details of those momentous events.*

*So in this chapter we explore the life of Jesus in these sections:*

***The birth and boyhood of Jesus***

***The beginning of Jesus' ministry***

***Jesus' Ministry - Overview***

***Jesus' Ministry - Characteristics***

***Prayer***

***Crowds and Healing***

***Teaching***

***Parables***

***Disciples***

***Opposition***

***Chronology with Jerusalem festivals***

***Holy Week***

***The resurrection and ascension***

*This **Lion of Judah** series gives you key Bible verses and passages about each theme. The passages in this chapter are drawn mainly from the Gospels. Each of the Gospel authors told the story of Jesus in their own way.*

*The beginning of Chapter 2, the Reign of Jesus, gives a brief overview of the approach of each of the Gospel writers with comments are reproduced from my study books on the Gospels: **Kingdom Life in Matthew**, **Kingdom Life in Mark**, **Kingdom Life in Luke**, and **Kingdom Life in John**. You can see the contents of these books on [www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com).*

## ***The Birth and Boyhood of Jesus***

*Matthew and Luke give us the stories of Jesus' birth and boyhood. Mark jumps right into John the Baptist's announcement of Jesus' ministry, and John begins with theological reflections about Jesus, the living Word of God and Son of God.*

*These passages about Jesus describe his miraculous birth and his boyhood.*

### ***The Birth of Jesus***

Now the birth of Jesus the Messiah took place in this way. When his mother Mary had been engaged to Joseph, but before they lived together, she was found to be with child from the Holy Spirit. <sup>19</sup> Her husband Joseph, being a righteous man and unwilling to expose her to public disgrace, planned to dismiss her quietly. <sup>20</sup> But just when he had resolved to do this, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, 'Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife, for the child conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit. <sup>21</sup> She will bear a son, and you are to name him Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins.' <sup>22</sup> All this took place to fulfil what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet:

<sup>23</sup> 'Look, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son,

and they shall name him Emmanuel',

which means, 'God is with us.' <sup>24</sup> When Joseph awoke from sleep, he did as the angel of the Lord commanded him; he took her as his wife, <sup>25</sup> but had no marital relations with her until she had borne a son; and he named him Jesus.

(Matthew 1:18-23; see Isaiah 7:14)

In those days Caesar Augustus issued a decree that a census should be taken of the entire Roman world. <sup>2</sup> (This was the first census that took place while Quirinius was governor of Syria.) <sup>3</sup> And everyone went to their own town to register.

<sup>4</sup> So Joseph also went up from the town of Nazareth in Galilee to Judea, to Bethlehem the town of David, because he belonged to the house and line of David. <sup>5</sup> He went there to register with Mary, who was pledged to be married to him and was expecting a child. <sup>6</sup> While they were there, the time came for the baby to be born, <sup>7</sup> and she gave birth to her firstborn, a son. She wrapped him in cloths and placed him in a manger, because there was no guest room available for them.

<sup>8</sup> And there were shepherds living out in the fields nearby, keeping watch over their flocks at night. <sup>9</sup> An angel of the Lord appeared to them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were terrified. <sup>10</sup> But the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid. I bring you good news that will cause great joy for all the people. <sup>11</sup> Today in the town of David a Saviour has been born to you; he is the Messiah, the Lord. <sup>12</sup> This will be a sign to you: You will find a baby wrapped in cloths and lying in a manger."

<sup>13</sup> Suddenly a great company of the heavenly host appeared with the angel, praising God and saying,

<sup>14</sup> "Glory to God in the highest heaven,

and on earth peace to those on whom his favour rests."

(Luke 2:1-14, NIV)

### ***Jesus Is Named***

<sup>21</sup>After eight days had passed, it was time to circumcise the child; and he was called Jesus, the name given by the angel before he was conceived in the womb. (Luke 2:21)

### ***Jesus Is Presented in the Temple***

*Simeon and Anna declared the baby's destiny.*

<sup>22</sup>When the time came for their purification according to the law of Moses, they brought him up to Jerusalem to present him to the Lord <sup>23</sup>(as it is written in the law of the Lord, 'Every firstborn male shall be designated as holy to the Lord'), <sup>24</sup>and they offered a sacrifice according to what is stated in the law of the Lord, 'a pair of turtle-doves or two young pigeons.'

(Luke 2:22-24; see Deuteronomy 18:4)

<sup>28</sup>Simeon took him in his arms and praised God, saying,

<sup>29</sup>'Master, now you are dismissing your servant in peace,  
according to your word;

<sup>30</sup>for my eyes have seen your salvation,

<sup>31</sup> which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples,

<sup>32</sup>a light for revelation to the Gentiles  
and for glory to your people Israel.'

<sup>33</sup>And the child's father and mother were amazed at what was being said about him.

<sup>34</sup>Then Simeon blessed them and said to his mother Mary, 'This child is destined for the falling and the rising of many in Israel, and to be a sign that will be opposed <sup>35</sup>so that the inner thoughts of many will be revealed—and a sword will pierce your own soul too.'

<sup>36</sup>There was also a prophet, Anna the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher. She was of a great age, having lived with her husband for seven years after her marriage, <sup>37</sup>then as a widow to the age of eighty-four. She never left the temple but worshipped there with fasting and prayer night and day. <sup>38</sup>At that moment she came, and began to praise God and to speak about the child to all who were looking for the redemption of Jerusalem.

(Luke 2:28-38)

### ***Wise Men from the East***

In the time of King Herod, after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea, wise men [astrologers, NRSV note; Greek: magi] from the East came to Jerusalem, <sup>2</sup>asking, 'Where is the child who has been born king of the Jews? For we observed his star at its rising, and have come to pay him homage.' <sup>3</sup>When King Herod heard this, he was frightened, and all Jerusalem with him; <sup>4</sup>and calling together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, he inquired of them where the Messiah was to be born. <sup>5</sup>They told him, 'In Bethlehem of Judea; for so it has been written by the prophet:

<sup>6</sup>"And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are by no means least among the rulers of Judah;  
for from you shall come a ruler  
who is to shepherd my people Israel."

<sup>7</sup>Then Herod secretly called for the wise men and learned from them the exact time when the star had appeared. <sup>8</sup>Then he sent them to Bethlehem, saying, 'Go and search diligently for the child; and when you have found him, bring me word so that I may also go and pay him homage.' <sup>9</sup>When they had heard the king, they set out; and there, ahead of them, went the star that they had seen at its rising, until it stopped over the place where the child was. <sup>10</sup>When they saw that the star had stopped, they were overwhelmed with joy. <sup>11</sup>On entering the house, they saw the child with Mary his mother; and they knelt down and paid him homage. Then, opening their treasure-chests, they offered him gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh. <sup>12</sup>And having been warned in a dream not to return to Herod, they left for their own country by another road.

(Matthew 2:1-12; see Micah 5:2)

### ***The Escape to Egypt***

<sup>13</sup>Now after they had left, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, 'Get up, take the child and his mother, and flee to Egypt, and remain there until I tell you; for Herod is about to search for the child, to destroy him.' <sup>14</sup>Then Joseph got up, took the child and his mother by night, and went to Egypt, <sup>15</sup>and remained there until the death of Herod. This was to fulfil what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, 'Out of Egypt I have called my son.'

(Matthew 2:13-15)

When they had finished everything required by the law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own town of Nazareth. <sup>40</sup>The child grew and became strong, filled with wisdom; and the favour of God was upon him. (Luke 2:39-40)

### ***The Boy Jesus in the Temple***

Now every year his parents went to Jerusalem for the festival of the Passover. <sup>42</sup>And when he was twelve years old, they went up as usual for the festival. <sup>43</sup>When the festival was ended and they started to return, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem, but his parents did not know it. <sup>44</sup>Assuming that he was in the group of travellers, they went a day's journey. Then they started to look for him among their relatives and friends. <sup>45</sup>When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem to search for him. <sup>46</sup>After three days they found him in the temple, sitting among the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. <sup>47</sup>And all who heard him were amazed at his understanding and his answers. <sup>48</sup>When his parents saw him they were astonished; and his mother said to him, 'Child, why have you treated us like this? Look, your father and I have been searching for you in great anxiety.' <sup>49</sup>He said to them, 'Why were you searching for me? Did you not know that I must be in my Father's house?' <sup>50</sup>But they did not understand what he said to them. <sup>51</sup>Then he went down with them and came to Nazareth, and was obedient to them. His mother treasured all these things in her heart. <sup>52</sup>And Jesus increased in wisdom and in years, and in divine and human favour.

(Luke 2:41-52)

## ***The Beginning of Jesus' Ministry***

*John the Baptist announced and introduced the ministry of his cousin, Joshua/Jesus, the Christ, the Messiah. The Holy Spirit came upon Jesus at his baptism and then, after temptations in the Judean wilderness, he ministered in the power of the Spirit.*

*John the Baptist baptized at Bethabara, also called Bethany beyond Jordan (John 1:28) and Enon near Salim "because water was abundant there" (John 3:23), in Perea in the Jordan valley.*

The beginning of the good news of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

As it is written in the prophet Isaiah,

'See, I am sending my messenger ahead of you,  
who will prepare your way;  
the voice of one crying out in the wilderness:  
"Prepare the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight."

(Mark 1:1-3; see Matthew 3:3; Luke 3:4-6; Malachi 3:1; Isaiah 40:3)

There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. <sup>7</sup>He came as a witness to testify to the light, so that all might believe through him. <sup>8</sup>He himself was not the light, but he came to testify to the light. <sup>9</sup>The true light, which enlightens everyone, was coming into the world.

(John 1:6-9)

This is the testimony given by John when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, 'Who are you?' ... <sup>23</sup>He said,

'I am the voice of one crying out in the wilderness,  
"Make straight the way of the Lord",  
as the prophet Isaiah said. ...

<sup>29</sup>The next day he saw Jesus coming towards him and declared, 'Here is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world! <sup>30</sup>This is he of whom I said, "After me comes a man who ranks ahead of me because he was before me." <sup>31</sup>I myself did not know him; but I came baptizing with water for this reason, that he might be revealed to Israel.' <sup>32</sup>And John testified, 'I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it remained on him. ...

<sup>34</sup>And I myself have seen and have testified that this is the Son of God.'

(John 1:19, 23, 29-32)

<sup>21</sup>Now when all the people were baptized, and when Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, the heaven was opened, <sup>22</sup>and the Holy Spirit descended upon him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven, 'You are my Son, the Beloved; with you I am well pleased.'

(Luke 3:21-22)

This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah:

'Here is my servant, whom I have chosen,  
my beloved, with whom my soul is well pleased.  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.  
He will not wrangle or cry aloud,



nor will anyone hear his voice in the streets.  
He will not break a bruised reed  
or quench a smouldering wick  
until he brings justice to victory.

And in his name the Gentiles will hope.'

(Matthew 12:17-21; see Isaiah 42:1-4)

*After his baptism, where Jesus was anointed by the Holy Spirit, he fasted for 40 days in the Judean wilderness and resisted temptation. Luke records it this way:*

Now when all the people were baptized, and when Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, the heaven was opened, <sup>22</sup> and the Holy Spirit descended upon him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven, 'You are my Son, the Beloved; with you I am well pleased.'

(Luke 3:21-33)

Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness, <sup>2</sup> where for forty days he was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing at all during those days, and when they were over, he was famished.

(Luke 4:1-2)

*John's Gospel notes how Andrew and his brother Peter met Jesus at the Jordan before returning to Galilee.*

The next day John again was standing with two of his disciples, <sup>36</sup> and as he watched Jesus walk by, he exclaimed, 'Look, here is the Lamb of God!' <sup>37</sup> The two disciples heard him say this, and they followed Jesus. <sup>38</sup> When Jesus turned and saw them following, he said to them, 'What are you looking for?' They said to him, 'Rabbi' (which translated means Teacher), 'where are you staying?' <sup>39</sup> He said to them, 'Come and see.' They came and saw where he was staying, and they remained with him that day. It was about four o'clock in the afternoon. <sup>40</sup> One of the two who heard John speak and followed him was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. <sup>41</sup> He first found his brother Simon and said to him, 'We have found the Messiah' (which is translated Anointed). <sup>42</sup> He brought Simon to Jesus, who looked at him and said, 'You are Simon son of John. You are to be called Cephas' (which is translated Peter).

(John 1:35-42)

*If Jesus cleared the traders out from the temple in Jerusalem twice, then John's account could refer to a Passover visit there around this time (John 2:13-25).*

## ***Jesus' Ministry – Overview***

*Jesus returned to Galilee at the beginning of his public ministry and was based in Capernaum on the north west shore of Lake Galilee.*

Now when Jesus heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee. <sup>13</sup> He left Nazareth and made his home in Capernaum by the lake, in the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali, <sup>14</sup> so that what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah might be fulfilled:

<sup>15</sup> 'Land of Zebulun, land of Naphtali,

on the road by the sea, across the Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles—

<sup>16</sup> the people who sat in darkness

have seen a great light,

and for those who sat in the region and shadow of death

light has dawned.'

(Matthew 4:13-16; see Isaiah 9:1-2)

Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about him spread through the whole countryside. <sup>15</sup> He was teaching in their synagogues, and everyone praised him.

<sup>16</sup> He went to Nazareth, where he had been brought up, and on the Sabbath day he went into the synagogue, as was his custom. He stood up to read, <sup>17</sup> and the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. Unrolling it, he found the place where it is written:

<sup>18</sup> 'The Spirit of the Lord is on me,

because he has anointed me

to proclaim good news to the poor.

He has sent me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners

and recovery of sight for the blind,

to set the oppressed free,

<sup>19</sup> to proclaim the year of the Lord's favour.<sup>f</sup>

<sup>20</sup> Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant and sat down. The eyes of everyone in the synagogue were fastened on him. <sup>21</sup> He began by saying to them, 'Today this scripture is fulfilled in your hearing.' ...

<sup>28</sup> All the people in the synagogue were furious when they heard this. <sup>29</sup> They got up, drove him out of the town, and took him to the brow of the hill on which the town was built, in order to throw him off the cliff. <sup>30</sup> But he walked right through the crowd and went on his way.

(Luke 4:14-21, 28-30 NIV; see Isaiah 61:1-2)

*This brief overview highlights some of the main developments of Jesus' ministry.*

*Jesus' **Early Judean ministry** began with his baptism, his fasting and temptations, and inviting enquirers to be with him,*

*Jesus' public ministry began when he was about 30 (Luke 3:23) after his baptism in the Jordan River in Judea, and 40 days fasting in the Judean desert where he rejected temptation. The Jordan flows from the freshwater Lake of Galilee, 700 feet below sea level, for 70 miles (100 kilometres) through the 6 mile wide (10 kilometre) Jordan valley*

to the Dead Sea, 1400 feet below sea level. This lowest place on earth is about 30 miles east from the mountain city of Jerusalem at 2,500 feet.

Jesus' ministry possibly covers three Passovers, as John's Gospel suggests: the first in John 2, the second in John 6:4 and the third (the Last Supper) in John 11:55; 12:1; 13:1; 18:28, 39; and 19:14. The other three Gospels all describe that final Passover.

Jesus began his **Early Galilean ministry** around his base at Capernaum on the north west of the Lake of Galilee. He called his first disciples who then travelled with him.

The **Major Galilean ministry** included commissioning the 12 apostles and covers most of the ministry of Jesus in Galilee.

The **Final Galilean ministry** began after John the Baptist's death and culminates in the Transfiguration in the mountains near Caesarea Philippi as Jesus prepared for his final journey to Jerusalem.

In the **Later Judean ministry** Jesus continued his final journey to Jerusalem down the Jordan valley, through Jericho on the southern Jordan up to the hills of Bethany and Jerusalem.

The **Final ministry in Jerusalem**, known as **The Passion Week** or **Holy Week** begins with Jesus' triumphal entry on what is now called Palm Sunday. The gospels devote about one third of their text to that last week.

The following overview gives more details.

Peter summarized Jesus' ministry this way:

That message spread throughout Judea, beginning in Galilee after the baptism that John announced: <sup>38</sup>how God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power; how he went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him. <sup>39</sup>We are witnesses to all that he did both in Judea and in Jerusalem. They put him to death by hanging him on a tree; <sup>40</sup>but God raised him on the third day and allowed him to appear, <sup>41</sup>not to all the people but to us who were chosen by God as witnesses, and who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead. <sup>42</sup>He commanded us to preach to the people and to testify that he is the one ordained by God as judge of the living and the dead.

(Acts 10:37-42)

### **Early Galilean ministry**

The **Early Galilean ministry** began when Jesus returned to Galilee after John the Baptist was imprisoned.

Now when Jesus heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee. <sup>13</sup>He left Nazareth and made his home in Capernaum by the lake ...

(Matthew 4:12-13)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Now after John was arrested, Jesus came to Galilee, proclaiming the good news of God,<sup>15</sup> and saying, 'The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God has come near; repent, and believe in the good news.' (Mark 1:14-15)

Then Jesus, filled with the power of the Spirit, returned to Galilee, and a report about him spread through all the surrounding country.<sup>15</sup> He began to teach in their synagogues and was praised by everyone.

(Luke 4:14)

*Jesus called his first disciples who began to travel with him, including his return to Nazareth where his explanation of his mission offended the townspeople. (Matthew 4:18-25; Luke 4:16-30).*

*John records Jesus' first miracle, turning water to wine at the marriage in Cana in Galilee (John 2:1-12). After that wedding Jesus returned to Capernaum accompanied by his family and disciples.*

*In Capernaum he taught in their synagogue, cast out an unclean spirit and healed Peter's mother-in-law. People were "astonished at his teaching; for his word was with authority" and reports of him soon spread widely (Mark 1:21-28; Luke 4:31-37).*

*Luke describes the first miraculous catch of fish and how Peter, with the brothers James and John, left their fishing business to follow Jesus (Luke 5:1-11).*

*Matthew records Jesus' Sermon on the Mount, (Matthew 5-7), the first of five discourses in Matthew (See details in the section on his teaching, and in **Kingdom Life in Matthew** in the Appendix). Luke records similar teaching in the Sermon on the Plain (Luke 6:17-49).*

### **Major Galilean ministry**

*The Major Galilean ministry, follows the Sermon on the Mount (from Matthew 8) to the death of John the Baptist (Matthew 14:1-12).*

*This period includes healing the Centurion's servant with a word (Matthew 8:5-13) and calming the storm on the lake (Matthew 8:23-27).*

*Matthew left his tax collecting business at Jesus' call (Matthew 9:9-13), and conflicts with religious leaders increased because Jesus associated with sinners and healed on the Sabbath.*

*After praying all night, Jesus chose 12 of his followers and commissioned them to preach, heal the sick and cast out unclean spirits, just as he did (Matthew 10:1-15; Luke 9:1-6).*

*A chorus that many of us sang as children, based on Matthew 10:2-4, to the tune of "Bringing in the Sheaves", lists the disciples:*

*There were 12 disciples Jesus called to help him,  
Simon Peter, Andrew, James, his brother John,  
Philip, Thomas, Matthew, James the son of Alphaeus,  
Thaddaeus, Simon, Judas and Bartholomew.*

*He has called us too, He has called us too.  
We are his disciples. I am one; are you?  
He has called us too, He has called us too.  
We are his disciples, we his work must do.*

*Two disciples of John the Baptist asked Jesus if he were the Messiah, to which Jesus summarized what he did in healing and teaching (Matthew 11:2-6). Matthew recounts many parables from Jesus' teaching in this period.*

### **Final Galilean ministry**

*The Final Galilean ministry began after John the Baptist was beheaded. When Jesus heard of John's death he sailed privately to a solitary place near Bethsaida on the north of the lake, but crowds followed him on foot. He had compassion for them, healed the sick, taught them and fed them miraculously, the first of two times he fed crowds miraculously.*

*He sent the disciples off in their boat and went to the hills to pray alone. That night he returned to them, walking on the water, as did Peter when he looked at Jesus. Jesus held him when he sank and as they went into the boat together the wind ceased and they were all immediately at the shore (Matthew 14:22-32; Mark 6:45-52; John 6:15-21). The disciples worshipped him declaring, "Truly you are the Son of God" (Matthew 14:33).*

*Jesus' conflict with and criticism of religious leaders increased. Jesus journeyed north to Tyre and Sidon on the Mediterranean where he healed the Canaanite's daughter even though that was outside his mission to Israel. Jesus then travelled back to Lake Galilee and healed, taught and fed 4,000 men plus women and children. He moved on to the Decapolis, 10 towns south east of Galilee, still healing and teaching.*

*Jesus' Galilean ministry culminated in taking the disciples away from the crowds into the hills north of Lake Galilee. At Caesarea Philippi, near Mt Hermon, Peter declared that Jesus was indeed the Messiah, the Son of God, and Jesus foretold his death and resurrection.*

*Peter, James and John witnessed the Transfiguration where Moses and Elijah talked with Jesus about his coming departure and God spoke from the cloud of glory: This is my Son, my Beloved/Chosen, whom I love; listen to him (Matthew 17:1-8; see Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36; 2 Peter 1:16-18).*

**The Transfiguration**, this pivotal event, told around the middle of the Synoptic Gospels, marks the beginning of Jesus' final journey – to Jerusalem and death.

### **Later Judean ministry**

*Jesus told his disciples three times about his approaching death and resurrection, but they did not comprehend. Confused and distressed they were afraid to ask him about it: First, at Caesarea Philippi (Matthew 16:21-28; Mark 8:31-38; Luke 9:21-27). Second, in Galilee (Matthew 17:22-23; Mark 9:30-32; Luke 9:43-45). Third, going to Jerusalem (Matthew 20:17-19; Mark 10:32-34; Luke 18:31-34).*

## *The Lion of Judah*

'See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and scribes, and they will condemn him to death; <sup>19</sup> then they will hand him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and flogged and crucified; and on the third day he will be raised.'

(Matthew 20:18-19)

*Early in this final journey south Jesus commissioned 70 of his followers to go in pairs ahead of him to tell about God's kingdom, heal the sick and cast out unclean spirits (Luke 10:1-24). They experienced God's power in their ministry.*

*Jesus journeyed south through the Jordan valley.*

He went away again across the Jordan to the place where John had been baptizing earlier, and he remained there. <sup>41</sup> Many came to him, and they were saying, 'John performed no sign, but everything that John said about this man was true.' <sup>42</sup> And many believed in him there.

(John 10:41-42)

*Jesus journeyed on to Jericho by the southern Jordan River where he ate with the despised tax collector Zacchaeus, healed many including blind Bartimaeus, and the crowds grew as he continued up the ranges toward Jerusalem.*

Jesus entered Jericho and was passing through. <sup>2</sup> A man was there by the name of Zacchaeus; he was a chief tax collector and was wealthy. <sup>3</sup> He wanted to see who Jesus was, but because he was short he could not see over the crowd. <sup>4</sup> So he ran ahead and climbed a sycamore-fig tree to see him, since Jesus was coming that way. ...

(Luke 19:1-4 NIV)

They came to Jericho. As he and his disciples and a large crowd were leaving Jericho, Bartimaeus son of Timaeus, a blind beggar, was sitting by the roadside. <sup>47</sup> When he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to shout out and say, 'Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!'

(Mark 10:46-47)

*When they reached Bethany on the southern slopes of the Mount of Olives just east of Jerusalem, Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead and stayed with him and his sisters Martha and Mary (John 11). The curious, adoring crowds continued to grow. From there he walked the mile into Jerusalem during his final week, often returning to Bethany at night.*

### ***Holy Week***

*The week culminating in the resurrection, known as Holy Week, occupies a third of each of the gospels. It includes Jesus' triumphal entry into Jerusalem, cleansing the temple, debates and conflict with Jewish leaders, anointing at Bethany, the Last Supper, agonizing prayer in Gethsemane, his trials by religious and political leaders, his flogging, crucifixion, burial and then his triumphant resurrection.*

*This chapter briefly notes that momentous week, which is more fully described in the next chapter, The Death of Jesus.*

## ***Jesus' Ministry – Characteristics***

*John's Gospel concludes with this observation:*

This is the disciple who is testifying to these things and has written them, and we know that his testimony is true. <sup>25</sup> But there are also many other things that Jesus did; if every one of them were written down, I suppose that the world itself could not contain the books that would be written.

(John 21:24-25)

*Many thousands, indeed millions, of books have been written about Jesus. This is one more!*

*The Bible, especially the New Testament, has been translated into more languages than any other book on earth. Currently this includes over 500 translations of the full Bible and around 3,000 additional translations of portions of the Bible, especially from the New Testament.*

*Then we have many more Bible commentaries, handbooks, encyclopaedias, study guides and devotional books such as this one.*

*Here I simply summarize some key verses or passages describing Jesus' short ministry. These passages highlight important characteristics of his life and ministry.*

*They are:*

***Prayer***

***Crowds and Healing***

***Teaching***

***Parables***

***Disciples***

***Opposition***

## ***Prayer***

*Jesus prayed, constantly.*

Now when all the people were baptized, and when Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, the heaven was opened, <sup>22</sup>and the Holy Spirit descended upon him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven, 'You are my Son, the Beloved; with you I am well pleased.'

(Luke 3: 21-22)

In the morning, while it was still very dark, he got up and went out to a deserted place, and there he prayed.

(Mark 1: 35)

But now more than ever the word about Jesus spread abroad; many crowds would gather to hear him and to be cured of their diseases. <sup>16</sup>But he would withdraw to deserted places and pray.

(Luke 5:15-16)

Now during those days he went out to the mountain to pray; and he spent the night in prayer to God. <sup>13</sup>And when day came, he called his disciples and chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles

(Luke 6:12-13)

Then Jesus took the loaves, and when he had given thanks, he distributed them to those who were seated; so also the fish, as much as they wanted.

(John 6:11)

Immediately he made the disciples get into the boat and go on ahead to the other side, while he dismissed the crowds. <sup>23</sup>And after he had dismissed the crowds, he went up the mountain by himself to pray.

(Matthew 14:22-23)

Now about eight days after these sayings Jesus took with him Peter and John and James, and went up on the mountain to pray. <sup>29</sup>And while he was praying, the appearance of his face changed, and his clothes became dazzling white.

(Luke 9:28-29)

He was praying in a certain place, and after he had finished, one of his disciples said to him, 'Lord, teach us to pray, as John taught his disciples.' <sup>2</sup>He said to them, 'When you pray, say:

Father, hallowed be your name.

Your kingdom come.

<sup>3</sup> Give us each day our daily bread.

<sup>4</sup> And forgive us our sins,

for we ourselves forgive everyone indebted to us.

And do not bring us to the time of trial.'

(Luke 11:1-4)



And when you pray, do not use vain repetitions as the heathen *do*. For they think that they will be heard for their many words.

<sup>8</sup> "Therefore do not be like them. For your Father knows the things you have need of before you ask Him. <sup>9</sup> In this manner, therefore, pray:

Our Father in heaven,  
Hallowed be Your name.

<sup>10</sup> Your kingdom come.

Your will be done

On earth as *it is* in heaven.

<sup>11</sup> Give us this day our daily bread.

<sup>12</sup> And forgive us our debts,

As we forgive our debtors.

<sup>13</sup> And do not lead us into temptation,

But deliver us from the evil one.

For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.

(Matthew 6:7-13 NKJV, from a later manuscript)

So they took away the stone. And Jesus looked upwards and said, 'Father, I thank you for having heard me. <sup>42</sup> I knew that you always hear me, but I have said this for the sake of the crowd standing here, so that they may believe that you sent me.'

(John 11:41-42)

*Jesus prayed at the last supper, and three times in Gethsemane, and on the cross.*

After Jesus had spoken these words, he looked up to heaven and said, 'Father, the hour has come; glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you, <sup>2</sup> since you have given him authority over all people<sup>1</sup> to give eternal life to all whom you have given him. <sup>3</sup> And this is eternal life, that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent. <sup>4</sup> I glorified you on earth by finishing the work that you gave me to do. <sup>5</sup> So now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had in your presence before the world existed.

(John 17:1-5; full prayer John 17: 1-26)

Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane; and he said to his disciples, 'Sit here while I go over there and pray.'<sup>37</sup> He took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be grieved and agitated. <sup>38</sup> Then he said to them, 'I am deeply grieved, even to death; remain here, and stay awake with me.'<sup>39</sup> And going a little farther, he threw himself on the ground and prayed, 'My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass from me; yet not what I want but what you want.'<sup>40</sup> Then he came to the disciples and found them sleeping; and he said to Peter, 'So, could you not stay awake with me one hour? <sup>41</sup> Stay awake and pray that you may not come into the time of trial;<sup>[a]</sup> the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.'<sup>42</sup> Again he went away for the second time and prayed, 'My Father, if this cannot pass unless I drink it, your will be done.'<sup>43</sup> Again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. <sup>44</sup> So leaving them again, he went away and prayed for the third time, saying the same words. <sup>45</sup> Then he came to the disciples and said to them, 'Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? See, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners.

(Matthew 26:36-45)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Father forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing.  
(Luke 23:34)

And about three o'clock Jesus cried with a loud voice, 'Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?' that is, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'

At three o'clock Jesus cried out with a loud voice, 'Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani?' which means, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'

(Matthew 27:46 and Mark 15:34; Psalm 22:1)

Father, into your hands I commit my spirit.  
(Luke 23:46 NIV; see Ps 31:5)

*The resurrected Jesus blessed his people.*

When he was at the table with them, he took bread, blessed and broke it, and gave it to them. <sup>31</sup> Then their eyes were opened, and they recognized him; and he vanished from their sight.

(Luke 24:30-31)

Then he led them out as far as Bethany, and, lifting up his hands, he blessed them. <sup>51</sup> While he was blessing them, he withdrew from them and was carried up into heaven.

(Luke 24:50-51)

## ***Crowds and Healing***

*Jesus constantly healed people and great crowds flocked to him.*

And great crowds followed him from Galilee, the Decapolis, Jerusalem, Judea, and from beyond the Jordan.

(Matthew 4:25)

[*Paralytic healed*] And when they could not bring him to Jesus because of the crowd, they removed the roof above him; and after having dug through it, they let down the mat on which the paralytic lay.

When the crowds saw it, they were filled with awe, and they glorified God, who had given such authority to human beings.

(Mark 2:4; Matthew 9:8; see Luke 5:19)

Jesus went out again beside the lake; the whole crowd gathered around him, and he taught them.

(Mark 2:13)

At daybreak he departed and went into a deserted place. And the crowds were looking for him; and when they reached him, they wanted to prevent him from leaving them.

(Luke 4:42)

But now more than ever the word about Jesus spread abroad; many crowds would gather to hear him and to be cured of their diseases.

(Luke 5:15)

A large crowd kept following him, because they saw the signs that he was doing for the sick.

(John 6:2)

Once while Jesus was standing beside the lake of Gennesaret, and the crowd was pressing in on him to hear the word of God, <sup>2</sup> he saw two boats there at the shore of the lake; the fishermen had gone out of them and were washing their nets. <sup>3</sup> He got into one of the boats, the one belonging to Simon, and asked him to put out a little way from the shore. Then he sat down and taught the crowds from the boat.

(Luke 5:1-3; see Matthew 4:18-22; Mark 1:16-20)

[*The Beatitudes*] When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up the mountain; and after he sat down, his disciples came to him.

(Matthew 5:1)

Now when Jesus had finished saying these things, the crowds were astounded at his teaching,

(Matthew 7:28)

When Jesus had come down from the mountain, great crowds followed him

(Matthew 8:1)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Now when Jesus saw great crowds around him, he gave orders to go over to the other side.

(Matthew 8:18)

Then Levi gave a great banquet for him in his house; and there was a large crowd of tax-collectors and others sitting at the table with them.

(Luke 5:29)

*[Jesus teaches and heals]* He came down with them and stood on a level place, with a great crowd of his disciples and a great multitude of people from all Judea, Jerusalem, and the coast of Tyre and Sidon. <sup>18</sup>They had come to hear him and to be healed of their diseases; and those who were troubled with unclean spirits were cured. <sup>19</sup>And all in the crowd were trying to touch him, for power came out from him and healed all of them.

(Luke 6:17-19)

When Jesus heard this he was amazed at him, and turning to the crowd that followed him, he said, 'I tell you, not even in Israel have I found such faith.'

(Luke 7:9; see Matthew 8:5-13)

*[Jesus Raises the Widow's Son at Nain]* Soon afterwards he went to a town called Nain, and his disciples and a large crowd went with him.

(Luke 7:11)

*[The Parable of the Sower]* When a great crowd gathered and people from town after town came to him, he said in a parable: ...

(Luke 8:4)

*[A Girl Restored to Life and a Woman Healed]* When Jesus had crossed again in the boat to the other side, a great crowd gathered round him; and he was by the lake. <sup>22</sup>Then one of the leaders of the synagogue named Jairus came and, when he saw him, fell at his feet <sup>23</sup>and begged him repeatedly, 'My little daughter is at the point of death. Come and lay your hands on her, so that she may be made well, and live.' <sup>24</sup>So he went with him. And a large crowd followed him and pressed in on him. ... *[A woman touched his robe.]* <sup>30</sup>Immediately aware that power had gone forth from him, Jesus turned about in the crowd and said, 'Who touched my clothes?' <sup>31</sup>And his disciples said to him, 'You see the crowd pressing in on you; how can you say, "Who touched me?"'

(Mark 5:21-31; see Matthew 9:18-26; Luke 8:40-56)

And when the demon had been cast out, the one who had been mute spoke; and the crowds were amazed and said, 'Never has anything like this been seen in Israel.'

(Matthew 9:33)

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd.

(Matthew 9:36)

Many crowds followed him, and he cured all of them (Matthew 12:15)

While he was still speaking to the crowds, his mother and his brothers were standing outside, wanting to speak to him.

A crowd was sitting around him; and they said to him, 'Your mother and your brothers and sisters are outside, asking for you.'  
(Matthew 12:46; Mark 3:32; see Luke 8:19)

He told his disciples to have a boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not crush him; <sup>10</sup>for he had cured many, so that all who had diseases pressed upon him to touch him. (Mark 3:9-10)

Then he went home; <sup>20</sup>and the crowd came together again, so that they could not even eat. (Mark 3:19-20)

[*The Parable of the Sower*] Again he began to teach beside the lake. Such a very large crowd gathered around him that he got into a boat on the lake and sat there, while the whole crowd was beside the lake on the land.  
(Mark 4:1; see Matthew 13:2)

[*Feeding 5,000*] Now when Jesus heard this, he withdrew from there in a boat to a deserted place by himself. But when the crowds heard it, they followed him on foot from the towns. <sup>14</sup>When he went ashore, he saw a great crowd; and he had compassion for them and cured their sick. <sup>15</sup>When it was evening, the disciples came to him and said, 'This is a deserted place, and the hour is now late; send the crowds away so that they may go into the villages and buy food for themselves.' <sup>16</sup>Jesus said to them, 'They need not go away; you give them something to eat.' <sup>17</sup>They replied, 'We have nothing here but five loaves and two fish.' <sup>18</sup>And he said, 'Bring them here to me.' <sup>19</sup>Then he ordered the crowds to sit down on the grass. Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, and blessed and broke the loaves, and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowds. ... Immediately he made the disciples get into the boat and go on ahead to the other side, while he dismissed the crowds. And after he had dismissed the crowds, he went up the mountain by himself to pray. When evening came, he was there alone,  
(Matthew 14:13-19, 22-23; see Mark 6:30-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:1-14)

[*Feeding 4,000*] Great crowds came to him, bringing with them the lame, the maimed, the blind, the mute, and many others. They put them at his feet, and he cured them, <sup>31</sup>so that the crowd was amazed when they saw the mute speaking, the maimed whole, the lame walking, and the blind seeing. And they praised the God of Israel. <sup>32</sup>Then Jesus called his disciples to him and said, 'I have compassion for the crowd, because they have been with me now for three days and have nothing to eat; and I do not want to send them away hungry, for they might faint on the way.' <sup>33</sup>The disciples said to him, 'Where are we to get enough bread in the desert to feed so great a crowd?' <sup>34</sup>Jesus asked them, 'How many loaves have you?' They said, 'Seven, and a few small fish.' <sup>35</sup>Then ordering the crowd to sit down on the ground, <sup>36</sup>he took the seven loaves and the fish; and after giving thanks he broke them and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowds. <sup>37</sup>And all of them ate and were filled; and they took up the broken pieces left over, seven baskets full. <sup>38</sup>Those who had eaten were four thousand men, besides women and children. <sup>39</sup>After sending away the crowds, he got into the boat and went to the region of Magadan. (Matthew 15:30-39; see Mark 8:1-10)

[*Deaf man cured*] He took him aside in private, away from the crowd, and put his fingers into his ears, and he spat and touched his tongue.  
(Mark 7:33; see Matthew 15:29-31)

## *The Lion of Judah*

He called the crowd with his disciples, and said to them, 'If any want to become my followers, let them deny themselves and take up their cross and follow me.  
(Mark 8:34; see Matthew 16:24; Luke 9:23)

[*The Healing of a Boy with a Spirit*] When they came to the disciples, they saw a great crowd around them, and some scribes arguing with them. <sup>15</sup> When the whole crowd saw him, they were immediately overcome with awe, and they ran forward to greet him. ...

<sup>25</sup> When Jesus saw that a crowd came running together, he rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, 'You spirit that keep this boy from speaking and hearing, I command you, come out of him, and never enter him again!'  
(Mark 9:14-15, 25; see Matthew 17:14-20)

Meanwhile, when the crowd gathered in thousands, so that they trampled on one another, he began to speak first to his disciples, 'Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, that is, their hypocrisy. ...'  
(Luke 12:1)

As they were leaving Jericho, a large crowd followed him. <sup>30</sup> There were two blind men sitting by the roadside. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they shouted, 'Lord, have mercy on us, Son of David!' <sup>31</sup> The crowd sternly ordered them to be quiet; but they shouted even more loudly, 'Have mercy on us, Lord, Son of David!' ... Moved with compassion, Jesus touched their eyes. Immediately they regained their sight and followed him.

(Matthew 20:29-30; see Mark 10:46-52; Luke 18:35-43)

[*The plot to kill Lazarus*] When the great crowd of the Jews learned that he was there, they came not only because of Jesus but also to see Lazarus, whom he had raised from the dead.

(John 12:9)

So the crowd that had been with him when he called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him from the dead continued to testify. <sup>18</sup> It was also because they heard that he had performed this sign that the crowd went to meet him.  
(John 12:17-18)

[*Triumphal entry to Jerusalem*] A very large crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches from the trees and spread them on the road. <sup>9</sup> The crowds that went ahead of him and that followed were shouting,

'Hosanna to the Son of David!

Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!

Hosanna in the highest heaven!

<sup>10</sup> When he entered Jerusalem, the whole city was in turmoil, asking, 'Who is this?'

<sup>11</sup> The crowds were saying, 'This is the prophet Jesus from Nazareth in Galilee.'

(Matthew 21:8-11; see Mark 11:1-10; Luke 19:28-40; John 12:12-19)

[*The betrayal and arrest of Jesus*] While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived; with him was a large crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and the elders of the people.

(Matthew 26:47; see Mark 14:43; Luke 22:47)

Now the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowds to ask for Barabbas and to have Jesus killed.  
(Matthew 27:20)

[*Pilate hands Jesus over to be crucified*] So when Pilate saw that he could do nothing, but rather that a riot was beginning, he took some water and washed his hands before the crowd, saying, 'I am innocent of this man's blood; see to it yourselves.'  
(Matthew 27:24)

Similar references to crowds:

Matthew 11:17; 12:23; 13:34; 15:10; 19:2; 21:46; 22:33; 23:1; 26:55; 27:20, 24.

Mark 4:36; 7:14,17; 9:17; 10:1; 11:18,32; 12:12,37;

Luke 7:24; 11:14,27,29; 12:13,54; 13:17; 14:25; 18:36; 19:3,39;

John 5:13; 7:12,32; 11:42; 12:12,18,34

***References to healing all diseases and all people:***

Jesus went throughout Galilee, teaching in their synagogues and proclaiming the good news of the kingdom and curing every disease and every sickness among the people.  
(Matthew 4:23)

That evening they brought to him many who were possessed by demons; and he cast out the spirits with a word, and cured all who were sick.  
(Matthew 8:16)

Then Jesus went about all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every disease among the people.  
(Matthew 9:35 NKJV)

Many crowds followed him, and he cured all of them, <sup>16</sup>and he ordered them not to make him known.  
(Matthew 12:15-16)

When the sun was setting, all those who had any that were sick with various diseases brought them to Him; and He laid His hands on every one of them and healed them.  
(Luke 4:40 NKJV)

One day, while he was teaching, Pharisees and teachers of the law were sitting nearby (they had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and from Jerusalem); and the power of the Lord was with him to heal.  
(Luke 5:17)

And all in the crowd were trying to touch him, for power came out from him and healed all of them.  
(Luke 6:19)

And wherever he went, into villages or cities or farms, they laid the sick in the market-places, and begged him that they might touch even the fringe of his cloak; and all who touched it were healed. (Mark 6:56)

## *The Lion of Judah*

*Jesus sent his disciples and others out to preach and heal.*

Then Jesus summoned his twelve disciples and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to cure every disease and every sickness.

(Matthew 10:1; see Luke 9:1)

Then Jesus called the twelve together and gave them power and authority over all demons and to cure diseases, <sup>2</sup>and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal. <sup>6</sup>They departed and went through the villages, bringing the good news and curing diseases everywhere.

(Luke 9:1-2, 6; see Matthew 10:1)

So they went out and proclaimed that all should repent. <sup>13</sup>They cast out many demons, and anointed with oil many who were sick and cured them.

(Mark 6:12-13)

After these things the Lord appointed seventy others also, and sent them two by two before His face into every city and place where He Himself was about to go. <sup>2</sup>Then He said to them, "The harvest truly *is* great, but the labourers *are* few; therefore pray the Lord of the harvest to send out labourers into His harvest. <sup>3</sup>Go your way; behold, I send you out as lambs among wolves. ... <sup>9</sup>And heal the sick there, and say to them, 'The kingdom of God has come near to you.'

(Luke 10:1-3, 9)



## Teaching

Matthew gathers discourses of Jesus as teaching segments throughout his narrative. Matthew arranged some of Jesus major teaching in five discourses. Each of these discourses has a shorter parallel in Mark or Luke.

1. *Sermon on the Mount*, (Matthew 5-7; see Luke 6 and 12)
2. *Missionary Discourse*, (Matthew 10; see Mark 6; Luke 9)
3. *Parable Discourse*, (Matthew 13; see Mark 4; Luke 8)
4. *Community Discourse* (Matthew 18; see Mark 9:33-48; Luke 9:46-48)
5. *End Times Discourse* (Matthew 24; see Mark 13; Luke 21)

Here are some of the best known teachings of Jesus.

### **Selections from the Sermon on the Mount**

#### **The Beatitudes**

And seeing the multitudes, He went up on a mountain, and when He was seated His disciples came to Him. <sup>2</sup> Then He opened His mouth and taught them, saying:

<sup>3</sup> "Blessed *are* the poor in spirit,

For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

<sup>4</sup> Blessed *are* those who mourn,

For they shall be comforted.

<sup>5</sup> Blessed *are* the meek,

For they shall inherit the earth.

<sup>6</sup> Blessed *are* those who hunger and thirst for righteousness,

For they shall be filled.

<sup>7</sup> Blessed *are* the merciful,

For they shall obtain mercy.

<sup>8</sup> Blessed *are* the pure in heart,

For they shall see God.

<sup>9</sup> Blessed *are* the peacemakers,

For they shall be called sons of God.

<sup>10</sup> Blessed *are* those who are persecuted for righteousness' sake,

For theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

<sup>11</sup> "Blessed are you when they revile and persecute you, and say all kinds of evil against you falsely for My sake. <sup>12</sup> Rejoice and be exceedingly glad, for great *is* your reward in heaven, for so they persecuted the prophets who were before you.

(Matthew 5:1-12 NKJV)

#### **Salt and Light**

'You are the salt of the earth; but if salt has lost its taste, how can its saltiness be restored? It is no longer good for anything, but is thrown out and trampled under foot.

<sup>14</sup> 'You are the light of the world. A city built on a hill cannot be hidden. <sup>15</sup> No one after lighting a lamp puts it under the bushel basket, but on the lampstand, and it gives light to all in the house. <sup>16</sup> In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father in heaven.

(Matthew 5:13-16)

***Love Your Enemies***

'You have heard that it was said, "You shall love your neighbour and hate your enemy."<sup>44</sup> But I say to you, Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you,<sup>45</sup> so that you may be children of your Father in heaven; for he makes his sun rise on the evil and on the good, and sends rain on the righteous and on the unrighteous.<sup>46</sup> For if you love those who love you, what reward do you have? Do not even the tax-collectors do the same?<sup>47</sup> And if you greet only your brothers and sisters, what more are you doing than others? Do not even the Gentiles do the same?<sup>48</sup> Be perfect, therefore, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

(Matthew 5:43-48)

***Do Not Worry***

'Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink, or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing?<sup>26</sup> Look at the birds of the air; they neither sow nor reap nor gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not of more value than they?<sup>27</sup> And can any of you by worrying add a single hour to your span of life?<sup>28</sup> And why do you worry about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they neither toil nor spin,<sup>29</sup> yet I tell you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these.<sup>30</sup> But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which is alive today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much more clothe you—you of little faith?<sup>31</sup> Therefore do not worry, saying, "What will we eat?" or "What will we drink?" or "What will we wear?"<sup>32</sup> For it is the Gentiles who strive for all these things; and indeed your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things.<sup>33</sup> But strive first for the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.

<sup>34</sup>'So do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will bring worries of its own. Today's trouble is enough for today.

(Matthew 6:25-34)

***Do Not Judge***

'Do not judge, so that you may not be judged.<sup>2</sup> For with the judgement you make you will be judged, and the measure you give will be the measure you get.<sup>3</sup> Why do you see the speck in your neighbour's eye, but do not notice the log in your own eye?<sup>4</sup> Or how can you say to your neighbour, "Let me take the speck out of your eye", while the log is in your own eye?<sup>5</sup> You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take the speck out of your neighbour's eye.

(Matthew 7:1-5)

***Keep Asking, Seeking, Knocking***

'Ask, and it will be given to you; search, and you will find; knock, and the door will be opened for you.<sup>8</sup> For everyone who asks receives, and everyone who searches finds, and for everyone who knocks, the door will be opened.<sup>9</sup> Is there anyone among you who, if your child asks for bread, will give a stone?<sup>10</sup> Or if the child asks for a fish, will give a snake?<sup>11</sup> If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask him!

(Matthew 7:7-11)

***The Golden Rule***

<sup>12</sup>'In everything do to others as you would have them do to you; for this is the law and the prophets. (Matthew 7:12 NRSV)

***The Narrow Way***

'Enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide and the road is easy that leads to destruction, and there are many who take it. <sup>14</sup>For the gate is narrow and the road is hard that leads to life, and there are few who find it.

(Matthew 7:13-14)

***Build on the Rock***

'Everyone then who hears these words of mine and acts on them will be like a wise man who built his house on rock. <sup>25</sup>The rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat on that house, but it did not fall, because it had been founded on rock. <sup>26</sup>And everyone who hears these words of mine and does not act on them will be like a foolish man who built his house on sand. <sup>27</sup>The rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew and beat against that house, and it fell—and great was its fall!

<sup>28</sup>Now when Jesus had finished saying these things, the crowds were astounded at his teaching, <sup>29</sup>for he taught them as one having authority, and not as their scribes.

(Matthew 7:24-29)

***Selection from the Mission Discourse***

***The Mission of the Twelve***

These twelve Jesus sent out with the following instructions: 'Go nowhere among the Gentiles, and enter no town of the Samaritans, <sup>6</sup>but go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. <sup>7</sup>As you go, proclaim the good news, "The kingdom of heaven has come near." <sup>8</sup>Cure the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, cast out demons. You received without payment; give without payment. <sup>9</sup>Take no gold, or silver, or copper in your belts, <sup>10</sup>no bag for your journey, or two tunics, or sandals, or a staff; for labourers deserve their food. <sup>11</sup>Whatever town or village you enter, find out who in it is worthy, and stay there until you leave. <sup>12</sup>As you enter the house, greet it. <sup>13</sup>If the house is worthy, let your peace come upon it; but if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you. <sup>14</sup>If anyone will not welcome you or listen to your words, shake off the dust from your feet as you leave that house or town. <sup>15</sup>Truly I tell you, it will be more tolerable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah on the day of judgement than for that town.

(Matthew 10:1-15 NKJV)

***Coming Persecutions***

'See, I am sending you out like sheep into the midst of wolves; so be wise as serpents and innocent as doves. <sup>17</sup>Beware of them, for they will hand you over to councils and flog you in their synagogues; <sup>18</sup>and you will be dragged before governors and kings because of me, as a testimony to them and the Gentiles. <sup>19</sup>When they hand you over, do not worry about how you are to speak or what you are to say; for what you are to say will be given to you at that time; <sup>20</sup>for it is not you who speak, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you. ...'

(Matthew 10:16-20 NKJV)

## ***Selections from the Parable Discourse***

### ***The Parable of the Sower***

Then He spoke many things to them in parables, saying: "Behold, a sower went out to sow. <sup>4</sup>And as he sowed, some *seed* fell by the wayside; and the birds came and devoured them. <sup>5</sup>Some fell on stony places, where they did not have much earth; and they immediately sprang up because they had no depth of earth. <sup>6</sup>But when the sun was up they were scorched, and because they had no root they withered away. <sup>7</sup>And some fell among thorns, and the thorns sprang up and choked them. <sup>8</sup>But others fell on good ground and yielded a crop: some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty. <sup>9</sup>He who has ears to hear, let him hear!"

### ***The Parable of the Mustard Seed***

<sup>31</sup>Another parable He put forth to them, saying: "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed, which a man took and sowed in his field, <sup>32</sup>which indeed is the least of all the seeds; but when it is grown it is greater than the herbs and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

### ***The Parable of the Pearl of Great Price***

<sup>45</sup>"Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a merchant seeking beautiful pearls, <sup>46</sup>who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had and bought it. (Matthew 13:3-9, 31-32, 45-46 NKJV)

## ***Selections from the Community Discourse***

### ***True Greatness***

At that time the disciples came to Jesus and asked, 'Who is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven?' <sup>2</sup>He called a child, whom he put among them, <sup>3</sup>and said, 'Truly I tell you, unless you change and become like children, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven. <sup>4</sup>Whoever becomes humble like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven. <sup>5</sup>Whoever welcomes one such child in my name welcomes me. (Matthew 18:1-5)

### ***Two or Three***

<sup>19</sup>"Again I say to you that if two of you agree on earth concerning anything that they ask, it will be done for them by My Father in heaven. <sup>20</sup>For where two or three are gathered together in My name, I am there in the midst of them." (Matthew 18:19-20 NKJV)

## ***Selections from the End Times Discourse***

As Jesus came out of the temple and was going away, his disciples came to point out to him the buildings of the temple. <sup>2</sup>Then he asked them, 'You see all these, do you not? Truly I tell you, not one stone will be left here upon another; all will be thrown down.'

### ***Signs of the End of the Age***

<sup>3</sup>When he was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately, saying, 'Tell us, when will this be, and what will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?' <sup>4</sup>Jesus answered them, 'Beware that no one leads you astray. <sup>5</sup>For many will come in my name, saying, "I am the Messiah!" and they will lead many astray.'

<sup>6</sup>And you will hear of wars and rumours of wars; see that you are not alarmed; for this must take place, but the end is not yet. <sup>7</sup>For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be famines and earthquakes in various places: <sup>8</sup>all this is but the beginning of the birth pangs.

### ***Persecutions Foretold***

<sup>9</sup>Then they will hand you over to be tortured and will put you to death, and you will be hated by all nations because of my name. <sup>10</sup>Then many will fall away, and they will betray one another and hate one another. <sup>11</sup>And many false prophets will arise and lead many astray. <sup>12</sup>And because of the increase of lawlessness, the love of many will grow cold. <sup>13</sup>But anyone who endures to the end will be saved.

(Matthew 24:1-13)

## ***Selections from other teachings of Jesus***

### ***The Great Commandment***

Then one of the scribes came, and having heard them reasoning together, perceiving that He had answered them well, asked Him, "Which is the first commandment of all?"

<sup>29</sup>Jesus answered him, "The first of all the commandments is: 'Hear, O Israel, the LORD our God, the LORD is one. <sup>30</sup>And you shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.' This is the first commandment. <sup>31</sup>And the second, like it, is this: 'You shall love your neighbour as yourself.' There is no other commandment greater than these."

(Mark 12:28-31 NKJV)

### ***The Great Commission***

Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, to the mountain which Jesus had appointed for them. <sup>17</sup>When they saw Him, they worshiped Him; but some doubted.

<sup>18</sup>And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. <sup>19</sup>Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup>teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, *even* to the end of the age."

(Matthew 28:16-20 NKJV)

### ***The Holy Spirit Promised – Jesus' Last Promise***

<sup>4</sup>And being assembled together with *them*, He commanded them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for the Promise of the Father, "which," *He said*, "you have heard from Me; <sup>5</sup>for John truly baptized with water, but you shall be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days from now." <sup>6</sup>Therefore, when they had come together, they asked Him, saying, "Lord, will You at this time restore the kingdom to Israel?" <sup>7</sup>And He said to them, "It is not for you to know times or seasons which the Father has put in His own authority. <sup>8</sup>But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be witnesses to Me in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth."

(Acts 1:4-8 NKJV)

## ***Parables***

This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet:

‘I will open my mouth to speak in parables;

I will proclaim what has been hidden from the foundation of the world.’

(Matthew 13:35; see Psalm 78:2)

*The most famous parables may be two recorded by Luke, known as the Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-37) and the Prodigal Son (Luke 15:11-32).*

***Here are useful summaries of the parables of Jesus.***

### ***Parables from Nature***

- The Sower (Mark 4:3-9; Matthew 13:3-9; Luke 8:5-8)
- Grain of Wheat (John 12:24)
- Weeds in the Wheat (Matthew 13:24-30)
- The Net (Matthew 13:47-50)
- Seed Growing Secretly (Mark 4:26-29)
- Mustard Seed (Matthew 13:31-34; Mark 4:30-32; Luke 13:18-19)
- The Leaven (Matthew 13:33; Luke 13:20-21)
- Budding Fig Tree (Matthew 24:32-35; Mark 13:28-31; Luke 21:19-31)
- Barren Fig Tree (Luke 13:6-9)
- Birds of the Air (Matthew 6:26; Luke 12:24)
- Flowers of the Field (Matthew 6:28-30; Luke 12:27f.)
- Vultures and Carcass (Matthew 24:28; Luke 17:37)
- Tree and its Fruit (Matthew 7:16; Luke 6:43-49)
- Weather Signs (Luke 12:54-56; Mark 8:11-13)

### ***Work and Wages***

- Master and Servant (Luke 17:7-10)
- Faithful and Unfaithful Servants (Matthew 24:45-51; Luke 12:42-46)
- Watchful Servants (Luke 12:35-38; Mark 13:33-37)
- Workers in the Vineyard (Matthew 20:1-16)
- The Talents (Matthew 25:14-30; Luke 19:12-27)
- Lamp on Lampstand (Matthew 5:14-16; Mark 4:21; Luke 8:16, 11:31)
- City Set on a Hill (Matthew 5:14)
- Eye, the Body’s Lamp (Matthew 6:22-23; Luke 11:34-36)
- Salt’s Savour (Matthew 5:13; Mark 9:50; Luke 14:34-35)
- Patch on Garment (Matthew 9:16; Mark 2:21; Luke 5:36)
- Wineskins (Matthew 9:17; Mark 2:22; Luke 5:37-39)
- Householder’s Treasure (Matthew 13:52)
- Dishonest Steward (Luke 16:1-12)
- The Defendant (Matthew 5:25-26; Luke 12:58-59)
- Unmerciful Servant (Matthew 18:23-35)
- Rich Fool (Luke 12:16-21)
- Wicked Vinedresser (Matthew 21:33-41; Mark 12:1-9; Luke 20:9-16)
- Two Builders (Matthew 7:24-27; Luke 6:47-49)
- Two Debtors (Luke 7:41-43)

## *The Life of Jesus*

- Hidden Treasure (Matthew 13:44)
- Pearl of Great Price (Matthew 13:45-46)

### ***Open and Closed Doors***

- Closed Door (Luke 13:24-30)
- The Doorkeeper (Mark 13:33-37; cf. Matthew 24:42)
- Faithful Servants (Matthew 24:42-51; Luke 12:32-48)
- Strong Man Bound (Matthew 12:29; Mark 3:27; Luke 11:21-22)
- Kingdom Divided (Mark 3:24-26; Luke 11:17-20)
- The Unoccupied House (Matthew 12:43-45; Luke 11:24-26)
- Importunate Neighbour (Luke 11:5-8)
- Son's Requests (Matthew 7:9-11; Luke 11:11-13)
- Unjust Judge (Luke 18:1-8)
- Pharisee and Publican (Luke 18:9-14)

### ***Weddings and Feasts***

- Children in the Marketplace (Matthew 11:16-19; Luke 7:31-35)
- Arrogant Guest (Luke 14:7-11)
- Bridegroom's Attendants (Matthew 9:15; Mark 2:18-20; Luke 5:34)
- Ten Virgins (Matt 25:1-13)
- Tower Builder and Warring King (Luke 14:28-32)
- Wedding Feast (Matthew 22:1-10; Luke 14:16-24)
- Wedding Garment (Matthew 22:11-14)
- Rich Man and Lazarus (Luke 16:19-31)

### ***Lost and Found***

- Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-37)
- Prodigal Son (Luke 15:11-32)
- The Two Sons (Matthew 21:28-32)
- Lost Coin (Luke 15:8-10)
- Lost Sheep (Matthew 28:12-14; Luke 15:4-7)
- Shepherd, Thief, Doorkeeper (John 10:1-18)
- Doctor and the Sick (Matthew 9:12; Mark 2:17; Luke 5: 31-32)
- Sheep and Goats (Matthew 25:31-46)

Adapted from Daily Scripture, with Don Schwager, at Servants of the Word:  
<http://www.rc.net/wcc/readings/parables.htm>. The next list is adapted from the NIV  
*Narrated Bible in Chronological Order* and the *Daily Bible in Chronological Order* by F  
LaGard Smith, compiled on  
<http://swapmeetdave.com/Bible/Parables/List-In-Order.pdf>

*The Lion of Judah*

**Parables: Chronological Order**

1 New cloth on an old coat	Mt9:16	Mk 2:21	Lk 5:36
2 New wine in old wineskins	Mt 9:17	Mk 2:22	Lk 5:37-38
3 Lamp on a stand (also see #6)	Mt 5:14-15		
4 Wise and foolish builders	Mt 7:24-27		Lk 6:47-49
5 Moneylender forgives unequal debts			Lk 7:41-43
6 Lamp on a stand (see 3)		Mk 4:21-22	Lk 8:16, 11:33
7 Rich man foolishly builds bigger barns			Lk 12:16-21
8 Servants must remain watchful (see 44)			Lk 12:35-40
9 Wise and foolish servants (see 42)			Lk 12:42-48
10 Unfruitful fig tree			Lk 13:6-9
11 Sower and four types of soil	Mt 13:3-23	Mk 4:320	Lk 8:5-15
12 Weeds among good plants	Mt 13:24-43		
13 Growing seed		Mk 4:26-29	
14 Mustard seed	Mt 13:31-32	Mk 4:30-32	Lk 13:18-19
15 Yeast	Mt 13:33		Lk13:20-21
16 Hidden treasure	Mt 13:44		
17 Valuable pearl	Mt 13:45-46		
18 Fishing net	Mt 13:47-50		
19 Owner of a house	Mt 13:52		
20 Lost sheep (see 29)	Mt 18:12-14		
21 The sheep, gate, and shepherd	(John 10:1-5, 7-18 )		
22 Master and his servant			Lk 17:7-10
23 Unmerciful servant	Mt 18:23-34		
24 Good Samaritan			Lk 10:30-37
25 Friend in need			Lk 11:5-8
26 Lowest seat at the feast			Lk 14:7-14
27 Invitation to a great banquet			Lk 14:16-24
28 Cost of discipleship			Lk 14:28-33
29 Lost sheep (see 20)			Lk 15:4-7
30 Lost coin			Lk 15:8-10
31 Lost (prodigal) son			Lk 15:11-32
32 Shrewd manager			Lk 16:1-8
33 Rich man and Lazarus			Lk 16:19-31
34 Workers in the vineyard	Mt 20:1-16		
35 Unjust judge & widow			Lk 18:2-8
36 Pharisee and tax collector			Lk 18:10-14
37 King's ten servants (see 45)			Lk 19:12-27
38 Two sons	Mt 21:28-32		
39 Wicked tenants	Mt 21:33-44	Mk 12:1-11	Lk 20:9-18
40 Wedding banquet	Mt 22:2-14		
41 Signs from a fig tree	Mt 24:32-35	Mk 13:28-29	Lk 21:29-31
42 Wise & foolish servants (see 9)	Mt 24:45-51		
43 Wise and foolish virgins	Mt 25:1-13		
44 Servants must be watchful (see 8)	Mk 13:35-37		
45 Three servants given talents (see 37)	Mt 25:14-30		
46 Sheep and goats will be separated	Mt25:31-46		



## Disciples

*Crowds followed Jesus constantly so that at times he and his followers could not even eat (Mark 3:20). A large group of devoted followers accompanied him, including many women who supported them. Among all these followers Jesus chose 12 to be with him constantly and from among them he chose 3 to witness unique events such as the transfiguration. During Jesus' final journey from Galilee to Jerusalem Jesus sent 70 of his followers ahead of him on mission to towns and villages he would visit for the last time. After his resurrection and ascension 120 of Jesus' followers remained in Jerusalem, worshipping and praying together till Pentecost. The passages here describe events involving Jesus' followers and disciples.*

### **Jesus' Followers**

*Jesus' followers included many women who cared for him and his disciples.*

After this, Jesus travelled about from one town and village to another, proclaiming the good news of the kingdom of God. The Twelve were with him, <sup>2</sup> and also some women who had been cured of evil spirits and diseases: Mary (called Magdalene) from whom seven demons had come out; <sup>3</sup> Joanna the wife of Chuza, the manager of Herod's household; Susanna; and many others. These women were helping to support them out of their own means. (Luke 8:1-3 NIV)

*Jesus sent 70 [or 72] of his followers on mission in pairs.*

After this the Lord appointed seventy [some manuscripts have 72] others and sent them on ahead of him in pairs to every town and place where he himself intended to go. <sup>2</sup> He said to them, 'The harvest is plentiful, but the labourers are few; therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out labourers into his harvest.

<sup>17</sup> The seventy [or 72] returned with joy, saying, 'Lord, in your name even the demons submit to us!' (Luke 10:1-2, 17)

*120 of his followers chose a successor to Judas from among those who had been with them from the time of John the Baptist. Those included Joseph (called Barsabbas or Justus) and Matthias.*

In those days Peter stood up among the believers (together the crowd numbered about one hundred and twenty people) and said, <sup>16</sup> 'Friends, the scripture had to be fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit through David foretold concerning Judas, who became a guide for those who arrested Jesus— ...

<sup>21</sup> So one of the men who have accompanied us throughout the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, <sup>22</sup> beginning from the baptism of John until the day when he was taken up from us—one of these must become a witness with us to his resurrection.' <sup>23</sup> So they proposed two, Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also known as Justus, and Matthias. <sup>24</sup> Then they prayed and said, 'Lord, you know everyone's heart. Show us which one of these two you have chosen <sup>25</sup> to take the place in this ministry and apostleship from which Judas turned aside to go to his own place.' <sup>26</sup> And they cast lots for them, and the lot fell on Matthias; and he was added to the eleven apostles. (Acts 1:15-16, 21-26)

### ***Jesus' Disciples***

*Jesus chose 12 from among his many followers to be his disciples (learners) whom he also called apostles (sent ones). They became leaders in the early church. The following passages describe how Jesus began inviting people to follow him first from the Jordan River where John was baptising and then in Galilee. Later from among these followers Jesus chose the 12 disciples to be with him constantly and to go on mission for him.*

*Andrew, Simon Peter, Philip, Nathaniel*

The next day John again was standing with two of his disciples, <sup>36</sup> and as he watched Jesus walk by, he exclaimed, 'Look, here is the Lamb of God!' <sup>37</sup> The two disciples heard him say this, and they followed Jesus. <sup>38</sup> When Jesus turned and saw them following, he said to them, 'What are you looking for?' They said to him, 'Rabbi' (which translated means Teacher), 'where are you staying?' <sup>39</sup> He said to them, 'Come and see.' They came and saw where he was staying, and they remained with him that day. It was about four o'clock in the afternoon. <sup>40</sup> One of the two who heard John speak and followed him was Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. <sup>41</sup> He first found his brother Simon and said to him, 'We have found the Messiah' (which is translated Anointed). <sup>42</sup> He brought Simon to Jesus, who looked at him and said, 'You are Simon son of John. You are to be called Cephas' (which is translated Peter).

<sup>43</sup> The next day Jesus decided to go to Galilee. He found Philip and said to him, 'Follow me.' <sup>44</sup> Now Philip was from Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter. <sup>45</sup> Philip found Nathanael and said to him, 'We have found him about whom Moses in the law and also the prophets wrote, Jesus son of Joseph from Nazareth.' <sup>46</sup> Nathanael said to him, 'Can anything good come out of Nazareth?' Philip said to him, 'Come and see.' <sup>47</sup> When Jesus saw Nathanael coming towards him, he said of him, 'Here is truly an Israelite in whom there is no deceit!' (John 1:35-47)

*Simon Peter and Andrew, James and John*

As Jesus passed along the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and his brother Andrew casting a net into the lake—for they were fishermen. <sup>17</sup> And Jesus said to them, 'Follow me and I will make you fish for people.' <sup>18</sup> And immediately they left their nets and followed him. <sup>19</sup> As he went a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and his brother John, who were in their boat mending the nets. <sup>20</sup> Immediately he called them; and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired men, and followed him.

(Mark 1:16-20; see Matthew 4:18-22; Luke 5:1-11)

*Matthew (also called Levi)*

As Jesus was walking along, he saw a man called Matthew sitting at the tax booth; and he said to him, 'Follow me.' And he got up and followed him.

<sup>10</sup> And as he sat at dinner in the house, many tax-collectors and sinners came and were sitting with him and his disciples. <sup>11</sup> When the Pharisees saw this, they said to his disciples, 'Why does your teacher eat with tax-collectors and sinners?' <sup>12</sup> But when he heard this, he said, 'Those who are well have no need of a physician, but those who are sick. <sup>13</sup> Go and learn what this means, "I desire mercy, not sacrifice." For I have come to call not the righteous but sinners.'

(Matthew 9:9-13; see Mark 2:13-17; Luke 5:27-32)

### ***The 12 Apostles***

Now during those days he went out to the mountain to pray; and he spent the night in prayer to God. <sup>13</sup> And when day came, he called his disciples and chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles: <sup>14</sup> Simon, whom he named Peter, and his brother Andrew, and James, and John, and Philip, and Bartholomew, <sup>15</sup> and Matthew, and Thomas, and James son of Alphaeus, and Simon, who was called the Zealot, <sup>16</sup> and Judas son of James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a traitor.

(Luke 6:12-16; see Matthew 10:1-4; Mark 3:13-19)

*Jesus often challenged his disciples, expecting them to have faith. They failed at times, but he persisted in discipling them. Here are examples.*

### ***Jesus calms the storm***

<sup>23</sup> Then he got into the boat and his disciples followed him. <sup>24</sup> Suddenly a furious storm came up on the lake, so that the waves swept over the boat. But Jesus was sleeping. <sup>25</sup> The disciples went and woke him, saying, 'Lord, save us! We're going to drown!'

<sup>26</sup> He replied, 'You of little faith, why are you so afraid?' Then he got up and rebuked the winds and the waves, and it was completely calm.

<sup>27</sup> The men were amazed and asked, 'What kind of man is this? Even the winds and the waves obey him!'

(Matthew 8:23-27; see Mark 4:35-41; Luke 8:22-25)

### ***Walking on water***

When the disciples saw him walking on the lake, they were terrified. 'It's a ghost,' they said, and cried out in fear.

<sup>27</sup> But Jesus immediately said to them: 'Take courage! It is I. Don't be afraid.'

<sup>28</sup> 'Lord, if it's you,' Peter replied, 'tell me to come to you on the water.'

<sup>29</sup> 'Come,' he said. Then Peter got down out of the boat, walked on the water and came towards Jesus. <sup>30</sup> But when he saw the wind, he was afraid and, beginning to sink, cried out, 'Lord, save me!'

<sup>31</sup> Immediately Jesus reached out his hand and caught him. 'You of little faith,' he said, 'why did you doubt?'

<sup>32</sup> And when they climbed into the boat, the wind died down. <sup>33</sup> Then those who were in the boat worshipped him, saying, 'Truly you are the Son of God.'

(Matthew 14:26-33 NIV; see Mark 6:45-52; John 6:15-21)

### ***Bread and yeast***

The disciples had forgotten to bring bread, except for one loaf they had with them in the boat. <sup>15</sup> 'Be careful,' Jesus warned them. 'Watch out for the yeast of the Pharisees and that of Herod.'

<sup>16</sup> They discussed this with one another and said, 'It is because we have no bread.'

<sup>17</sup> Aware of their discussion, Jesus asked them: 'Why are you talking about having no bread? Do you still not see or understand? Are your hearts hardened? <sup>18</sup> Do you have eyes but fail to see, and ears but fail to hear? And don't you remember? <sup>19</sup> When I broke the five loaves for the five thousand, how many basketfuls of pieces did you pick up?'

'Twelve,' they replied.

<sup>20</sup> 'And when I broke the seven loaves for the four thousand, how many basketfuls of pieces did you pick up?'

They answered, 'Seven.'

<sup>21</sup> He said to them, 'Do you still not understand?'

(Mark 8:17-21 NIV; see Matthew 16:5-12)

<sup>12</sup> Then they understood that he was not telling them to guard against the yeast used in bread, but against the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees.  
(Matthew 16:12 NIV)

***Who is the greatest?***

They came to Capernaum. When he was in the house, he asked them, 'What were you arguing about on the road?' <sup>34</sup> But they kept quiet because on the way they had argued about who was the greatest.

<sup>35</sup> Sitting down, Jesus called the Twelve and said, 'Anyone who wants to be first must be the very last, and the servant of all.'

<sup>36</sup> He took a little child whom he placed among them. Taking the child in his arms, he said to them, <sup>37</sup> 'Whoever welcomes one of these little children in my name welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me does not welcome me but the one who sent me.'

(Mark 9:33-37 NIV; see Matthew 18:1-5; Luke 9:46-48)

***Peter's Declaration about Jesus***

<sup>27</sup> Jesus went on with his disciples to the villages of Caesarea Philippi; and on the way he asked his disciples, 'Who do people say that I am?' <sup>28</sup> And they answered him, 'John the Baptist; and others, Elijah; and still others, one of the prophets.' <sup>29</sup> He asked them, 'But who do you say that I am?' Peter answered him, 'You are the Messiah.' <sup>30</sup> And he sternly ordered them not to tell anyone about him.

***Jesus Foretells His Death and Resurrection***

<sup>31</sup> Then he began to teach them that the Son of Man must undergo great suffering, and be rejected by the elders, the chief priests, and the scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. <sup>32</sup> He said all this quite openly. And Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him. <sup>33</sup> But turning and looking at his disciples, he rebuked Peter and said, 'Get behind me, Satan! For you are setting your mind not on divine things but on human things.'

(Mark 8:27-33; see Matthew 16:13-28; Luke 9:18-27)

***A boy possessed***

A man in the crowd answered, 'Teacher, I brought you my son, who is possessed by a spirit that has robbed him of speech. <sup>18</sup> Whenever it seizes him, it throws him to the ground. He foams at the mouth, gnashes his teeth and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive out the spirit, but they could not.'

<sup>19</sup> 'You unbelieving generation,' Jesus replied, 'how long shall I stay with you? How long shall I put up with you? Bring the boy to me.'

<sup>28</sup> After Jesus had gone indoors, his disciples asked him privately, 'Why couldn't we drive it out?'

<sup>29</sup> He replied, 'This kind can come out only by prayer [some manuscripts: prayer and fasting].'

(Mark 9:17-19, 28-29; see Matthew 17:14-21; Luke 9:37-43)

### ***Arguments and opposition***

An argument started among the disciples as to which of them would be the greatest. <sup>47</sup> Jesus, knowing their thoughts, took a little child and made him stand beside him. <sup>48</sup> Then he said to them, 'Whoever welcomes this little child in my name welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me welcomes the one who sent me. For it is the one who is least among you all who is the greatest.'

<sup>49</sup> 'Master,' said John, 'we saw someone driving out demons in your name and we tried to stop him, because he is not one of us.'

<sup>50</sup> 'Do not stop him,' Jesus said, 'for whoever is not against you is for you.'

<sup>51</sup> As the time approached for him to be taken up to heaven, Jesus resolutely set out for Jerusalem. <sup>52</sup> And he sent messengers on ahead, who went into a Samaritan village to get things ready for him; <sup>53</sup> but the people there did not welcome him, because he was heading for Jerusalem. <sup>54</sup> When the disciples James and John saw this, they asked, 'Lord, do you want us to call fire down from heaven to destroy them?' <sup>55</sup> But Jesus turned and rebuked them. <sup>56</sup> Then he and his disciples went to another village.

(Luke 9:46-56 NIV; see Matthew 18:1-5; Mark 9:33-41)

### ***Jesus blesses children***

People were bringing little children to Jesus for him to place his hands on them, but the disciples rebuked them. <sup>14</sup> When Jesus saw this, he was indignant. He said to them, 'Let the little children come to me, and do not hinder them, for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these. <sup>15</sup> Truly I tell you, anyone who will not receive the kingdom of God like a little child will never enter it.' <sup>16</sup> And he took the children in his arms, placed his hands on them and blessed them.

(Mark 10:13-16 NIV; see Matthew 19:13-15; Luke 18:15-17)

### ***Dispute at the Last Supper***

A dispute also arose among them as to which of them was considered to be greatest. <sup>25</sup> Jesus said to them, 'The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them; and those who exercise authority over them call themselves Benefactors. <sup>26</sup> But you are not to be like that. Instead, the greatest among you should be like the youngest, and the one who rules like the one who serves. <sup>27</sup> For who is greater, the one who is at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who is at the table? But I am among you as one who serves.

(Luke 22:24-27 NIV; see John 13:1-20, Jesus washed the disciples' feet)

### ***Jesus prays in Gethsemane***

Then he returned to his disciples and found them sleeping. 'Simon,' he said to Peter, 'are you asleep? Couldn't you keep watch for one hour? <sup>38</sup> Watch and pray so that you will not fall into temptation. The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.'

<sup>39</sup> Once more he went away and prayed the same thing. <sup>40</sup> When he came back, he again found them sleeping, because their eyes were heavy. They did not know what to say to him.

<sup>41</sup> Returning the third time, he said to them, 'Are you still sleeping and resting? Enough! The hour has come. Look, the Son of Man is delivered into the hands of sinners. ...

<sup>50</sup> Then everyone deserted him and fled.

(Mark 14:36-41, 50 NIV; see Matthew 26:36-46; Luke 22:39-46)

***Jesus commissioned and equipped his followers***

***Jesus sent the 12 and the 70 on mission with his authority and promised they would be empowered.***

When Jesus had called the Twelve together, he gave them power and authority to drive out all demons and to cure diseases, <sup>2</sup>and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal those who were ill. <sup>3</sup>He told them: "Take nothing for the journey – no staff, no bag, no bread, no money, no extra shirt. <sup>4</sup>Whatever house you enter, stay there until you leave that town. <sup>5</sup>If people do not welcome you, leave their town and shake the dust off your feet as a testimony against them." <sup>6</sup>So they set out and went from village to village, proclaiming the good news and healing people everywhere.

(Luke 9:1-6 NIV; see Matthew 10:5-15)

After this the Lord appointed seventy [some manuscripts, 72] others and sent them on ahead of him in pairs to every town and place where he himself intended to go. <sup>2</sup>He said to them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the labourers are few; therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out labourers into his harvest. <sup>3</sup>Go on your way. See, I am sending you out like lambs into the midst of wolves. <sup>4</sup>Carry no purse, no bag, no sandals; and greet no one on the road. <sup>5</sup>Whatever house you enter, first say, "Peace to this house!" <sup>6</sup>And if anyone is there who shares in peace, your peace will rest on that person; but if not, it will return to you. <sup>7</sup>Remain in the same house, eating and drinking whatever they provide, for the labourer deserves to be paid. Do not move about from house to house. <sup>8</sup>Whenever you enter a town and its people welcome you, eat what is set before you; <sup>9</sup>cure the sick who are there, and say to them, "The kingdom of God has come near to you." ...

<sup>17</sup>The seventy [or 72] returned with joy, saying, 'Lord, in your name even the demons submit to us!' <sup>18</sup>He said to them, 'I watched Satan fall from heaven like a flash of lightning. <sup>19</sup>See, I have given you authority to tread on snakes and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy; and nothing will hurt you. <sup>20</sup>Nevertheless, do not rejoice at this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven.'

(Luke 10:1-9, 17-19)

***Jesus' final promise***

So when they had come together, they asked him, 'Lord, is this the time when you will restore the kingdom to Israel?' <sup>7</sup>He replied, 'It is not for you to know the times or periods that the Father has set by his own authority. <sup>8</sup>But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.' <sup>9</sup>When he had said this, as they were watching, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight.

(Acts 1:6-9)

## Opposition

Jesus became famous but also aroused opposition. He avoided many assassination attempts. Two kings wanted to kill him (Matthew 2:13; Luke 13:31). His townspeople attempted to push him over a cliff (Luke 4:29). People in Jerusalem tried to stone him more than once (John 8:59, 10:31). Leaders plotted to kill him many times (Matthew 12:14, 26:4; Mark 11:18; Luke 19:47). Eventually they did kill him, but Jesus himself chose the time, the day, the place and the method. He is the Lamb of God, killed on the Preparation Day of the Passover in the afternoon when the Passover lambs were killed (Mark 15:42; John 19:14).

'The reason my Father loves me is that I lay down my life – only to take it up again. <sup>18</sup>No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord. I have authority to lay it down and authority to take it up again. This command I received from my Father.'  
(John 10:17-18)

*Herod the Great and his son Herod Antipas both wanted to kill Jesus.*

Now after they had left, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, 'Get up, take the child and his mother, and flee to Egypt, and remain there until I tell you; for Herod is about to search for the child, to destroy him.'  
(Matthew 2:13)

At that very hour some Pharisees came and said to him, 'Get away from here, for Herod wants to kill you.'  
(Luke 13:31)

*People in Nazareth and Jerusalem tried to kill Jesus.*

When they heard this, all in the synagogue were filled with rage. <sup>29</sup>They got up, drove him out of the town, and led him to the brow of the hill on which their town was built, so that they might hurl him off the cliff. <sup>30</sup>But he passed through the midst of them and went on his way.  
(Luke 4:28-30)

Jesus said to them, 'Very truly, I tell you, before Abraham was, I am.' <sup>59</sup>So they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.  
(John 8:58-59)

Jesus answered, '... The Father and I are one.'  
<sup>31</sup>The Jews took up stones again to stone him.  
(John 10:25-31)

But the Pharisees went out and conspired against him, how to destroy him.  
(Matthew 12:14)

And when the chief priests and the scribes heard it, they kept looking for a way to kill him; for they were afraid of him, because the whole crowd was spellbound by his teaching.  
(Mark 11:18)

## *The Lion of Judah*

Every day he was teaching in the temple. The chief priests, the scribes, and the leaders of the people kept looking for a way to kill him;  
(Luke 19:47)

Then the chief priests and the elders of the people gathered in the palace of the high priest, who was called Caiaphas, <sup>4</sup> and they conspired to arrest Jesus by stealth and kill him.  
(Matthew 26:3-4)

*The Jewish day ended at sunset, so Jesus ate the Passover, the Last Supper, on the same Jewish day that he died.*

*Note that although the religious leaders did not want to kill Jesus during the feast (Matthew 26:5) and Pilate did not want to kill Jesus at all, Jesus chose to die during the feast on the Preparation Day when the sacrificial Pascal Lambs were slain, the day before the Sabbath (Mark 15:42; Luke 23:54; John 18:28; 19:14, 31, 42 and Matthew 27:62).*





## Map



[http://www.bible-history.com/maps/palestine\\_nt\\_times.html](http://www.bible-history.com/maps/palestine_nt_times.html)

*Used with permission*

## Chronology with Jerusalem festivals

### Birth and Boyhood of Jesus

Description	Location	Scripture
The Divinity of Christ	.	Jn 1:1-5
Birth of John the Baptist announced	Jerusalem	Lk 1:5-25
Betrothal of the Virgin Mary	Nazareth	Mt 1:18 Lk 1:27
The annunciation of the birth of Jesus	Nazareth	Lk 1:26-38
about 120 miles (190 km) – about two weeks travel		
The visitation of Mary to Elizabeth	Judah	Lk 1:39-55
about 120 miles – about two weeks travel		
Her return to Nazareth	Nazareth	Lk 1:56
Joseph's vision	Nazareth	Mt 1:20-25
Birth and infancy of John the Baptist	Judah	Lk 1:57-80
about 90 miles – about ten days travel from Nazareth, and 5 miles (8 km) south of Jerusalem		
Birth of Jesus	Bethlehem	Lk 2:1-7
Adoration by the shepherds	Bethlehem	Lk 2:8-16
Circumcision	Bethlehem	Mt 1:25 Lk 2:21
about 5 miles – about half a day's travel		
Presentation and purification	Jerusalem	Lk 2:22-29
The Genealogies	.	Mt 1:1-17 Lk 3:23-38
about 5 miles – about half a day's travel		
Adoration by the wise men	Bethlehem	Mt 2:1-12
Flight into Egypt	Egypt	Mt 2:13-15
Massacre of the innocents	Bethlehem	Mt 2:16-18
about 100 miles (160 km) – about ten days' travel		
Return to Nazareth	Nazareth	Mt 2:19-23 Lk 2:39
Childhood of Jesus	Nazareth	Lk 2:40
about 90 miles (145 km) – about ten days' travel		
With the teachers in the Temple	Jerusalem	Lu 2:41-50
about 90 miles – about ten days' travel		
Youth of Jesus	Nazareth	Lu 2:51-52

*This chronology and charts are adapted and used with permission from Believe:*

*<http://mb-soft.com/believe/txh/gospgosp.htm>*

### ***From John the Baptist to the First Passover***

<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
Ministry of John the Baptist	Bethabara	Mt 3:1-4 Mr 1:1-8 Lk 3:1-6 Jn 1:6-15
Baptisms by John	Bethabara	Mt 3:5 Mk 1:5 Lk 3:7
First testimony of the Baptist to Christ	Bethabara	Mt 3:11,12 Mk 1:7,8 Lk 3:15-18
Baptism of Jesus by John	Bethabara	Mt 3:13-17 Mk 1:9-11 Lk 3:21,22
Temptation of Jesus Wilderness Of Judea	Judea	Mt 4:1-11 Mk 1:12,13 Lk 4:1-13
John the Baptist's second testimony	Bethabara	Jn 1:19-35
Call of the first disciples	Bethabara	Jn 1:37-51
First Miracle at Cana	Cana	Jn 2:1-11
Visit to Capernaum	Capernaum	Jn 2:12
First Passover: Cleansing of the Temple	Jerusalem	Jn 2:13-23
Discourse with Nicodemus	Jerusalem	Jn 3:1-21

### ***From the First Passover to the Second Passover***

<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
The Baptist's last testimony	Aenon	Jn 3:23-36
Jesus visits Samaria	Sychar	Jn 4:1-42
Return to Cana	Cana	Jn 4:43-46
Nobleman's son healed	Cana	Jn 4:46-54
Brief visit to Jerusalem	Jerusalem	Jn 5:1-47
Miracle at pool of Bethesda	Jerusalem	Jn 5:1-47
John the Baptist in prison	Machaerus	Mt 4:12,17 Mk 1:14,15
Jesus preaches in Galilee	Galilee	Lk 4:14,15
Jesus preaches at Nazareth	Nazareth	Mk 6:1 Lk 4:15-30
Jesus preaches at Capernaum	Capernaum	Mt 4:13-16 Lk 4:31

*The Lion of Judah*

Call of Andrew, Peter, James and John	Capernaum	Mt 4:18-22 Mk 1:16-20 Lk 5:1-11
Miracle draught of fishes	Capernaum	Lk 5:1-11
Demoniac healed	Capernaum	Mk 1:23-27 Lk 4:33-36
Peter's mother-in-law healed	Capernaum	Mt 8:14,15 Mk 1:29-31 Lk 4:38,39
Many sick and diseased healed	Capernaum	Mt 8:16,17 Mk 1:32-34 Lk 4:40,41
Retirement for solitary prayer	Galilee	Mk 1:35 Lk 4:42
Circuit through Galilee	Galilee	Mk 1:35-39 Lk 4:42-44
Miraculous Healing of a leper	Galilee	Mt 8:1-4 Mk 1:40-45 Lk 5:12-16
Retirement for a solitary prayer	Galilee	Mk 1:45 Lk 5:16
Miraculous Healing of a paralytic	Capernaum	Mt 9:1-8 Mk 2:1-12 Lk 5:18-26
Call of Matthew(Levi) Discourse at the feast	Capernaum	Mt 9:9-17 Mk 2:13-22 Lk 5:27-39
Disciples pluck the ears of corn	Galilee	Mt 12:1-8 Mk 2:23-28 Lk 6:1-5
The man with a withered hand healed	Capernaum	Mt 12:9-14 Mk 3:1-6 Lk 6:6-11
Retirement for solitary prayer	Galilee	Lk 6:12
Call of the Twelve Apostles	Hill of Hattin?	Mt 10:2-4 Mk 3:13-19 Lk 6:13-16
Sermon on the Mount	Hill of Hattin?	Mt 5:7-29 Lk 6:17-49
Parable of House on rock or sand	Hill of Hattin?	Mt 7:24-29 Lk 6:47-49
Centurion's servant healed	Hill of Hattin?	Mt 8:5-13 Lk 7:1-10
Widow of Nain's son raised	Nain	Lk 7:11-17
Message from John the Baptist	Capernaum	Mt 11:2-19 Lk 7:18-35
Jesus tells of John the Baptist	Capernaum	Mt 11:2-19 Lk 7:18-35
The sinful woman	Capernaum?	Lk 7:36-50
Parable of two debtors	Capernaum?	Lk 7:41,42

Galilee tour with the twelve	Galilee	Lk 8:1-3
Demoniac healed	Capernaum	Mt 12:22
Blasphemy against Holy Spirit	Capernaum	Mt 12:24-37 Mk 3:22-30
The unclean spirit	Capernaum	Mt 12:43-46
Jesus' relatives	Capernaum	Mt 12:46 Mk 3:31
Parables: The Sower	Galilee	Mt 13:1-9,18-23 Mk 4:1,14-20 Lk 8:4,11-15
Parables: The Tares	Galilee	Mt 13:24
Parables: The Mustard seed	Galilee	Mt 13:31 Mk 4:30
Parables: The Leaven	Galilee	Mt 13:33 Lk 13:20,21
Parables: The Candle	Galilee	Mt 5:15 Mk 4:21 Lk 8:16
Parables: The Candle	Galilee	Mt 5:15 Mk 4:21 Lk 11:33
Parables: The Treasure	Galilee	Mt 13:44
Parables: The Pearl	Galilee	Mt 13:45
Parables: The Dragnet	Galilee	Mt 13:47
Parables: Seed grows secretly	Galilee	Mk 4:26-29
Jesus calms the storm	Lake Galilee	Mt 8:24-27 Mk 4:37-41 Lk 8:23-25
Gergesene demoniacs set free	Gergesa	Mt 8:28-34 Mk 5:1-15 Lk 8:27-35
Parables: The Bridegroom	Capernaum	Mt 9:15
Parable: Cloth on old garment	Capernaum	Mt 9:16 Mk 2:21 Lk 5:36
Parable: new wine in old skins	Capernaum	Mt 9:17 Mk 2:22 Lk 5:37,38
Woman with issue of blood	Gennesaret	Mt 9:18 Mk 5:22 Lk 8:41
Jairus' daughter raised	Capernaum	Mt 9:18 Mk 5:22 Lk 8:41
Two blind men healed	Capernaum	Mt 9:27,30
Dumb spirit cast out	Capernaum	Mt 9:32,33
Mission of Twelve Apostles	Capernaum	Mt 10:1 Mk 6:7-12 Lk 9:1-6
Death of John the Baptist	Machaerus	Mt 14:1-12 Mk 6:14-29 Lk 9:7
Feeding of the five thousand	Bethsaida	Mt 14:13-21 Mk 6:30-44 Lk 9:12-17 Jn 6:1-13
Jesus walks on the water	Lake Galilee	Mt 14:25 Mk 6:48 Jn 6:19
Bread of Life discourse	Capernaum	Mt 14:34 Jn 6:26-70

***From the Second Passover to the Third***

<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
Opposition of Scribes and Pharisees	Capernaum	Mt 15:1
Discourse on Pollution	Capernaum	Mt 15:2-20 Mk 7:1-23
Healing the daughter of the Syrophenician woman	Phoenicia	Mt 15:21-29 Mk 7:24-30
Deaf and dumb man healed	Tyre, Sidon	Mk 7:32
Healing of many sick people	Decapolis	Mt 15:30,31
Feeding of the four thousand	Gennesaret	Mt 15:32-39 Mk 8:1-9
Parable of the leaven of Pharisees	Gennesaret	Mt 16:1-12 Mk 8:14-22
Healing of the Blind man	Bethsaida	Mk 8:23-27
Peter's confession of Christ	Caesarea Phillippi	Mt 16:13-21 Mk 8:27-30
First prediction of the passion	Caesarea Phillippi	Mt 16:21-28 Mk 8:31-38 Lk 9:22-27
The transfiguration	Mt. Hermon	Mt 17:1-8 Mk 9:2-8 Lk 9:28-36
Healing the demoniac child	Mt. Hermon	Mt 17:14-21 Mk 9:14-27 Lk 9:37-42
Second prediction of the passion	Mt. Hermon	Mt 17:22,23 Mk 9:31 Lk 9:43,44
The coin in the fish's mouth	Capernaum	Mt 17:27
Lesson on docility	Capernaum	Mt 18:1-14 Mk 9:33-37 Lk 9:46-48
Lesson on forgiveness	Capernaum	Mt 18:15 Mk 9:43
Lesson on self-denial	Capernaum	Mt 18:18
Parable of the unmerciful servant	Capernaum	Mt 18:23-35
Trip to Jerusalem through Samaria	Samaria	Lk 9:51,52
Jealousy of the Samaritans	Samaria	Lk 9:53
Anger of the 'sons of thunder'	Samaria	Lk 9:54-56
The feast of tabernacles	Jerusalem	Jn 7:2-10
Discourses	Jerusalem	Jn 7:10-46
Officers sent to arrest Christ	Jerusalem	Jn 7:30,46
The adulteress	Jerusalem	Jn 8:3

Discourses	Jerusalem	Jn 8:12
Christ threatened with stoning	Jerusalem	Jn 8:59
Blind man healed and discourses	Jerusalem	Jn 9:1
Christ the Door	Jerusalem	Jn 10:1
Christ the Good Shepherd	Jerusalem	Jn 10:11
Departure from Jerusalem.		
Mission of the seventy	Judea	Lk 10:1-16
Return of the seventy	Judea	Lk 10:17-24
Parable of the Good Samaritan	Judea	Lk 10:30-37
Visit to Martha, Mary	Bethany	Lk 10:38-42
Jesus teaches his disciples to pray	Judea	Lk 11:1-13
Parable of importunate friend	Judea	Lk 11:5-8
Mute demoniac healed	Judea	Mt 12:22-45 Lk 11:14
Pharisees' blasphemy rebuked	Judea	Mt 12:22-45 Lk 11:14
Discourses: repentant Ninevites	Judea	Mt 12:41 Lk 11:29-36
Providence to birds and flowers	Judea	Lk 12:1-12
Parable of the rich fool	Judea	Lk 12:13-21
Parable of servants watching	Judea	Lk 12:35-40
Parable of the wise steward	Judea	Lk 12:42-48
The murdered Galileans	Judea	Lk 13:1-5
The barren fig tree	Judea	Lk 13:6-9
Healing of woman with an infirmity	Judea	Lk 13:10-17
Feast of Dedication in Jerusalem	Jerusalem	Jn 10:22-30
Attempt to stone Jesus	Jerusalem	Jn 10:31
Jesus retires across Jordan	Peraea	Jn 10:40
Are there few that be saved?	Peraea	Lk 13:23-30
The message to Herod	Peraea	Lk 13:31-33
Healing of the man with dropsy	Peraea	Lk 14:1-6
Parable of the great supper	Peraea	Lk 14:15-24
Parable of Tower, Warring King	Peraea	Lk 14:28-33
Parable of the lost sheep	Peraea	Mt 18:12,13 Lk 15:1-7
Parable of the lost coin	Peraea	Lk 15:8-10
Parable of the prodigal son	Peraea	Lk 15:11-32

*The Lion of Judah*

Parable of the unjust steward	Peraea	Lk 16:1-13
Parable of the rich man and Lazarus	Peraea	Lk 16:19-31
Parable of the unprofitable servants	Peraea	Lk 17:7-10
Sickness of Lazarus	Bethany	Jn 11:1-10
Jesus goes from Peraea to Bethany	Peraea	Jn 11:11-16
Miraculous Resurrection of Lazarus	Bethany	Jn 11:17-46
The council: Advice of Caiaphas	Jerusalem	Jn 11:47-53
Jesus retires to the town of Ephraim	Ephraim	Jn 11:54
Last journey to Jerusalem	Samaria border	Mt 19:1 Mk 10:1 Lk 17:11
Healing of the ten lepers	Samaria border	Lk 17:12-19
Parable of the unjust judge	Samaria border	Lk 18:1-8
Parable: Pharisee and the publican	Samaria border	Lk 18:9-14
The question of divorce	Samaria border	Mt 19:3-12 Mk 10:2-12
Christ blesses little children	Samaria border	Mt 19:13-15 Mk 10:13-16 Lk 18:15-17
The rich young ruler	Samaria border	Mt 19:16-22 Mk 10:17-22 Lk 18:18-23
Parable: Labourers in the vineyard	Samaria border	Mt 20:1-16
Third prediction of the passion	Samaria border	Mt 20:17-19 Mk 10:32-34 Lk 18:31-34
Request of James and John	Samaria border	Mt 20:20-28 Mk 10:35-45
Healing of Blind Bartimaeus	Near Jericho	Mt 20:29-34 Mk 10:46-52 Lk 18:35-43
Jesus at the house of Zacchaeus	Jericho	Lk 19:1-10
Parable of the pounds	Jericho	Lk 19:11-28



### ***Holy Week: Confrontation***

<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
The supper in Simon's house	Bethany	Mt 26:6-13 Mk 14:3-9 Jn 12:1-9
Mary anoints Jesus	Bethany	Mt 26:7-13 Mk 14:3-8 Jn 12:3-8
Triumphal entry into the city	Jerusalem	Mt 21:1-11 Mk 11:1-10 Lk 19:29-44 Jn 12:12-19
Survey of the Temple	Jerusalem	Mr 11:11
Retirement to Bethany	Bethany	Mr 11:11
Withering of the barren fig-tree	Olivet	Mt 21:18-19 Mk 11:12-14
Second cleansing of the Temple	Jerusalem	Mt 21:12-17 Mk 11:15-19 Lk 19:45-48
Retirement to Bethany	Bethany	Mt 21:17 Mk 11:19
The lesson of the fig-tree	Olivet	Mt 21:20-22 Mk 11:20-25
Discourses in the Temple:	Jerusalem	Mk 11:26
The rulers' question	Jerusalem	Mt 21:23-27 Mk 11:27-33 Lk 20:1-8
The parable of the two sons	Jerusalem	Mt 21:28-32
Parable of the wicked husbandmen	Jerusalem	Mt 21:33-46 Mk 12:1-12 Lk 20:9-19
Parable of the wedding garment	Jerusalem	Mt 22:1-14
The subtle questions:-		
1) of the Pharisees – the tribute money	Jerusalem	Mt 22:15-22 Mk 12:13-17 Lk 20:20-26
2) of the Sadducees – the resurrection	Jerusalem	Mt 22:23-33 Mk 12:18-27 Lk 20:27-39
3) of the Lawyer – the great commandment	Jerusalem	Mt 22:34-40 Mk 12:28-34
Our Lord's counter question	Jerusalem	Mt 22:41-46 Mk 12:35-37 Lk 20:41-44
Scribes and Pharisees denounced	Jerusalem	Mt 23:13-33
The widow's mite	Jerusalem	Mk 12:41-44 Lk 21:1-4
The coming of the Greeks	Jerusalem	Jn 12:20-36
The departure to the Mt of Olives	Olivet	Mt 24:1-3 Mr 13:1-3

## *The Lion of Judah*

Prediction 1: the destruction of Jerusalem	Olivet	Mt 24:3-28 Mk 13:3-23 Lk 21:5-24
Parable of fig-tree and all the trees	Olivet	Mt 24:32,33 Mk 13:28,29 Lk 21:29-32
Prediction 2: of the second coming	Olivet	Mt 24:28-51 Mk 13:23-37 Lk 21:24-36
Parable of the householder	Olivet	Mk 13:34
Parables:- The ten virgins	Olivet	Mt 25:1-13
Parables:- The talents	Olivet	Mt 25:14-30
Parables:- The sheep and the goats	Olivet	Mt 25:31-46
The Sanhedrin in council	Jerusalem	Mt 26:3-5 Mk 14:1-2 Lk 22:1-2
Compact of the traitor	Jerusalem	Mt 26:14-16 Mk 14:10,11 Lk 22:3-6

## *The Last Supper*

Preparation of the Passover	Jerusalem	Mt 26:17-19 Mk 14:12-16 Lk 22:7-13
Washing the apostles' feet	Jerusalem	Jn 13:1-17
The breaking of bread	Jerusalem	Mt 26:26 Mk 14:22 Lk 22:19
'One of you shall betray me'	Jerusalem	Mt 26:21 Mk 14:18 Lk 22:21 Jn 13:21
'Is it I?'	Jerusalem	Mt 26:22-25 Mk 14:19
Giving of the sop	Jerusalem	Jn 13:26,27
Departure of Judas Iscariot	Jerusalem	Jn 13:30
Peter warned	Jerusalem	Mt 26:34 Mk 14:30 Lk 22:34 Jn 13:38
Blessing the cup	Jerusalem	Mt 26:27,28 Mk 14:23,24 Lk 22:17
The discourses after supper	Jerusalem	Jn 14:1-16:33
Christ's prayer for his apostles	Jerusalem	Jn 17:1-17:26
The hymn	Jerusalem	Mt 26:30 Mk 14:26

## ***Gethsemane and Trials***

The agony	Gethsemane	Mt 26:37 Mk 14:33 Lk 22:39 Jn 18:1
The thrice-repeated prayer	Gethsemane	Mt 26:39-44 Mk 14:36-39 Lk 22:42
Sweat and angel support	Gethsemane	Lk 22:43,44
The sleep of the apostles	Gethsemane	Mt 26:40-45 Mk 14:37-41 Lk 22:45,46
Betrayal by Judas	Gethsemane	Mt 26:47-50 Mk 14:34,44 Lk 22:47 Jn 18:2-5
Peter smites Malchus	Gethsemane	Mt 26:51 Mk 14:47 Lk 22:50 Jn 18:10
Jesus heals the ear of Malchus	Gethsemane	Lk 22:51
Jesus forsaken by disciples	Gethsemane	Mt 26:56 Mk 14:50
Jesus led to Annas	Jerusalem	Jn 18:12,13
Jesus tried by Caiaphas	Jerusalem	Mt 26:57 Mk 14:53 Lk 22:54 Jn 18:15
Peter follows Jesus	Jerusalem	Mt 26:58 Mk 14:54 Lk 22:55 Jn 18:15
The high priest's adjuration	Jerusalem	Mt 26:63 Mk 14:61
Jesus condemned, buffeted, mocked	Jerusalem	Mt 26:66,67 Mk 14:64,65 Lk 22:63-65
Peter's denial of Christ	Jerusalem	Mt 26:69-75 Mk 14:66-72 Lk 22:54-62 Jn 18:17-27
Jesus before Pilate	Jerusalem	Mt 27:1,2 Mk 15:1 Lk 23:1 Jn 18:28
Repentance of Judas	Jerusalem	Mt 27:3
Pilate comes out to the people	Jerusalem	Jn 18:29
Pilate speaks to Jesus privately	Jerusalem	Jn 18:33
Pilate orders him to be scourged	Jerusalem	Mt 27:26 Mk 15:15 Jn 19:1
Jesus crowned with thorns	Jerusalem	Mt 27:29 Mk 15:17 Jn 19:2
'Behold the man'	Jerusalem	Jn 19:5
Jesus accused formally	Jerusalem	Mt 27:11 Mk 15:2 Lk 23:2
Jesus sent by Pilate to Herod	Jerusalem	Lk 23:6-11
Jesus mocked, arrayed in purple	Jerusalem	Lk 23:6-11

*The Lion of Judah*

'Behold your King'	Jerusalem	Jn 19:14
Pilate desires to release him	Jerusalem	Mt 27:15 Mk 15:6 Lk 23:17 Jn 19:12
Pilate's wife message	Jerusalem	Mt 27:19
Pilate washes his hands	Jerusalem	Mt 27:24
Pilate releases Barabbas	Jerusalem	Mt 27:26
Pilate delivers Jesus to be crucified	Jerusalem	Mt 27:26 Mk 15:15 Lk 23:25 Jn 19:16



## Crucifixion

Simon of Cyrene carries the cross	Jerusalem	Mt 27:32 Mk 15:21 Lk 23:26
They give Jesus vinegar and gall	Golgotha	Mt 27:34 Mk 15:23 Lk 23:36
They nail him to the cross	Golgotha	Mt 27:35 Mk 15:24,25 Lk 23:33 Jn 19:18
The superscription	Golgotha	Mt 27:37 Mk 15:26 Lk 23:38 Jn 19:19
1) Father, forgive them	Golgotha	Lk 23:34
His garments parted, and vesture allotted	Golgotha	Mt 27:35 Mk 15:24 Lk 23:34 Jn 19:23
Passers-by rail, the two thieves revile	Golgotha	Mt 27:39-44 Mk 15:29-32 Lk 23:35
The penitent thief	Golgotha	Lk 23:40
2) Today you will be with me ...	Golgotha	Lk 23:43
3) Woman, behold your son. ...	Golgotha	Jn 19:26,27
Darkness over all the land	Golgotha	Mt 27:45 Mk 15:33 Lk 23:44,45
4) My God, my God, why ... ?	Golgotha	Mt 27:46 Mk 15:34
5) I thirst	Golgotha	Jn 19:28
The vinegar	Golgotha	Mt 27:48 Mk 15:36 Jn 19:29
6) It is finished	Golgotha	Jn 19:30
7) Father, into your hands ...	Golgotha	Lk 23:46
Rending of the veil	Jerusalem	Mt 27:51 Mk 15:38 Lk 23:45
Graves opened, saints resurrected	Jerusalem	Mt 27:52
Testimony of Centurion	Golgotha	Mt 27:54 Mk 15:39 Lk 23:47
Watching of the women	Golgotha	Mt 27:55 Mk 15:40 Lk 23:49
The piercing of his side	Golgotha	Jn 19:34
Taking down from the cross	The Garden	Mt 27:57-60 Mk 15:46 Lk 23:53 Jn 19:38-42
Burial by Joseph of Arimethea, Nicodemus	The Garden	Mt 27:57-60 Mk 15:46 Lk 23:53 Jn 19:38-42
A guard placed over the sealed stone	Garden	Mt 27:65,66

**Resurrection**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
Women carry spices to the tomb	The Garden	Mt 28:1 Mk 16:1,2 Lk 24:1
The angel had rolled away the stone	Garden	Mt 28:2
Women announce the resurrection	Jerusalem	Mt 28:8 Lk 24:9,10 Jn 20:1,2
Peter and John run to the tomb	Garden	Lk 24:12 Jn 20:3
The women return to the tomb	Garden	Lk 24:1
The guards report to the chief priests	Jerusalem	Mt 28:11-15
<b>APPEARANCES OF CHRIST</b>		
1) To Mary Magdalene	Garden	Mk 16:9,10 Jn 20:14
'All hail! Fear not. Touch me not'	Garden	Mt 28:9 Jn 20:17
2) To the women returning home	Garden	Mt 28:9-10
3) To two disciples going to Emmaus	Emmaus Road	Mk 16:12 Lk 24:13
4) To Peter	Jerusalem	1Cor 15:5 Lk 24:34
5) To ten Apostles in the upper room	Jerusalem	Lk 24:33 Jn 20:19-23
6) To eleven Apostles in the upper room	Jerusalem	Mk 16:14 Jn 20:26-29
7) To 500 at once Miracle – Draught of fishes	Unknown	1 Cor 15:6
8) To James	Unknown	1 Cor 15:6
Draught of fishes	Galilee	Jn 21:1-11
9) To disciples at sea of Tiberias	Galilee	Jn 21:1-14
10) To eleven disciples on a mountain	Galilee	Mt 28:16-20
<b>THE ASCENSION</b>	Mt of Olives Bethany	Mk 16:19 Lk 24:50-51 Acts 1:6-9

***Chapter 4***  
***The Death of Jesus***



*The Lion and the Lamb*

## ***The Old Testament foretold Jesus' death***

*Many passages in the Old Testament find their fulfilment in Jesus. Chapter 2, The Reign of Jesus gives many more examples. Here are a few passages that apply specifically to his death.*

*John the Baptist, the prophetic forerunner for the Messiah announced that Jesus was the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world (John 1:29; also 1:35).*

*This profound declaration about Jesus identified him as the fulfilment of the sacrificial lambs including those offered every year at Passover. Passover commemorated the Hebrews' deliverance from Egypt when those who sacrificed a lamb without spot or blemish and smeared its blood on their doorposts and the lintel above were saved from the angel of death who killed all the first born males in Egypt that night.*

*Jesus fulfilled the Passover in himself, the Lamb of God. He gave new meaning and significance to that Passover meal at the Last Supper on the same Jewish day (commencing after sunset) that he died as the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world.*

*Jesus himself had referred to the way he would die by referring to the snake lifted up on a pole so that anyone who looked to it would be saved from the serpents' poison (John 3:14-16; see Numbers 21:9).*

*Psalm 22 is the psalm quoted most often in the New Testament. Many of these verses are applied to Jesus' death.*

My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? [Matthew 27:46]

*Why are You so far from helping Me,  
And from the words of My groaning?*

<sup>2</sup> O My God, I cry in the daytime, but You do not hear;  
And in the night season, and am not silent.

<sup>3</sup> But You *are* holy,  
Enthroned in the praises of Israel.

<sup>4</sup> Our fathers trusted in You;  
They trusted, and You delivered them.

<sup>5</sup> They cried to You, and were delivered;  
They trusted in You, and were not ashamed.

<sup>6</sup> But I *am* a worm, and no man;  
A reproach of men, and despised by the people.

<sup>7</sup> All those who see Me ridicule Me; [Matthew 27:39; Luke 23:35]  
They shoot out the lip, they shake the head, *saying,*

<sup>8</sup> "He trusted in the LORD, let Him rescue Him;  
Let Him deliver Him, since He delights in Him!" [Matthew 27:43] ...



<sup>13</sup> They gape at Me *with* their mouths,  
*Like* a raging and roaring lion.

<sup>14</sup> I am poured out like water,  
And all My bones are out of joint;  
My heart is like wax;  
It has melted within Me.

<sup>15</sup> My strength is dried up like a potsherd,  
And My tongue clings to My jaws; [John 19:28]  
You have brought Me to the dust of death.

<sup>16</sup> For dogs have surrounded Me;  
The congregation of the wicked has enclosed Me.  
They pierced My hands and My feet; [John 20:27]

<sup>17</sup> I can count all My bones.  
They look *and* stare at Me.

<sup>18</sup> They divide My garments among them,  
And for My clothing they cast lots. [Matthew 27:35; John 19:23-24]

<sup>19</sup> But You, O LORD, do not be far from Me;  
O My Strength, hasten to help Me! ...

<sup>28</sup> For the kingdom *is* the LORD's,  
And He rules over the nations.

<sup>29</sup> All the prosperous of the earth  
Shall eat and worship;  
All those who go down to the dust  
Shall bow before Him,  
Even he who cannot keep himself alive.

<sup>30</sup> A posterity shall serve Him.  
It will be recounted of the Lord to the *next* generation,

<sup>31</sup> They will come and declare His righteousness to a people who will be born,  
That He has done *this*. (Psalm 22 NKJV)

*Possibly the strongest Old Testament indication that the Messiah must suffer and die is in Isaiah's 'Servant Songs' that describe the suffering servant of the Lord.*

*These passages are:*

Isaiah 42:1-4; see Matthew 12:17-21.

Isaiah 49:1-6

Isaiah 50:4-9

Isaiah 53:14 – 53:12. And some people include

Isaiah 61:1-3 (see Luke 4:18-19)

*The most famous of these is from Isaiah 52 and 53:*

Just as there were many who were astonished at him  
—so marred was his appearance, beyond human semblance,  
and his form beyond that of mortals—

*The Lion of Judah*

<sup>15</sup> so he shall startle many nations;  
kings shall shut their mouths because of him;  
for that which had not been told them they shall see,  
and that which they had not heard they shall contemplate.

**53** Who has believed what we have heard?  
And to whom has the arm of the LORD been revealed?

<sup>2</sup> For he grew up before him like a young plant,  
and like a root out of dry ground;  
he had no form or majesty that we should look at him,  
nothing in his appearance that we should desire him.

<sup>3</sup> He was despised and rejected by others;  
a man of suffering and acquainted with infirmity;  
and as one from whom others hide their faces  
he was despised, and we held him of no account.

<sup>4</sup> Surely he has borne our infirmities  
and carried our diseases; [Matthew 8:17]  
yet we accounted him stricken,  
struck down by God, and afflicted.

<sup>5</sup> But he was wounded for our transgressions,  
crushed for our iniquities;  
upon him was the punishment that made us whole,  
and by his bruises we are healed. [1 Peter 2:24]

<sup>6</sup> All we like sheep have gone astray; [1 Peter 2:25]  
we have all turned to our own way,  
and the LORD has laid on him  
the iniquity of us all.

<sup>7</sup> He was oppressed, and he was afflicted,  
yet he did not open his mouth;  
like a lamb that is led to the slaughter, [John 1:29; Acts 8:32-33]  
and like a sheep that before its shearers is silent,  
so he did not open his mouth. [1 Peter 2:23]

<sup>8</sup> By a perversion of justice he was taken away.  
Who could have imagined his future?  
For he was cut off from the land of the living,  
stricken for the transgression of my people.

<sup>9</sup> They made his grave with the wicked  
and his tomb with the rich, [Matthew 27:57-60]  
although he had done no violence,  
and there was no deceit in his mouth. [1 Peter 2:22]

<sup>10</sup> Yet it was the will of the LORD to crush him with pain. [Acts 2:23]  
When you make his life an offering for sin,  
he shall see his offspring, and shall prolong his days;  
through him the will of the LORD shall prosper.

<sup>11</sup> Out of his anguish he shall see light;  
he shall find satisfaction through his knowledge.  
The righteous one, my servant, shall make many righteous,

and he shall bear their iniquities.

<sup>12</sup> Therefore I will allot him a portion with the great,  
and he shall divide the spoil with the strong;  
because he poured out himself to death,  
and was numbered with the transgressors; [Luke 22:37]  
yet he bore the sin of many,  
and made intercession for the transgressors. [Luke 23:34]  
(Isaiah 53:14 – 53:12)

*The Gospels tell how Jesus fulfilled prophecies in the Old Testament Scriptures. See Chapter 2, The Reign of Jesus, for many more examples.*

*John's Gospel includes these passages and references from the Old Testament which apply to Jesus' death:*

And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, <sup>15</sup> that whoever believes in him may have eternal life. <sup>16</sup> 'For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him may not perish but may have eternal life.  
(John 3:14-16; see Numbers 21:9)

It was to fulfil the word that is written in their law, "They hated me without a cause" (John 15:25; see Psalm 35:19; 69:4).

This was to fulfil what the scripture says, 'They divided my clothes among themselves, and for my clothing they cast lots.'  
(John 19:24; see Psalm 22:18)

These things occurred so that the scripture might be fulfilled, 'None of his bones shall be broken.'<sup>37</sup> And again another passage of scripture says, 'They will look on the one whom they have pierced.'  
(John 19:36-37; see Psalm 34:20; 22:16; Zechariah 12:10)

They did not understand the scripture, that he must rise from the dead.  
(John 20:9; see Psalm 16:10)

## ***Jesus foretold his death***

*Jesus' Galilean ministry culminated in taking the disciples away from the crowds into the hills north of Lake Galilee. At Caesarea Philippi, near Mt Hermon, Peter declared that Jesus was indeed the Messiah, the Son of God, and Jesus foretold his death and resurrection (Matthew 16:13-28; Mark 8:27-38; Luke 9:18-27).*

*Peter, James and John witnessed the Transfiguration where Moses and Elijah talked with Jesus about his approaching death.*

<sup>28</sup> Now about eight days after these sayings Jesus took with him Peter and John and James, and went up on the mountain to pray. <sup>29</sup> And while he was praying, the appearance of his face changed, and his clothes became dazzling white. <sup>30</sup> Suddenly they saw two men, Moses and Elijah, talking to him. <sup>31</sup> They appeared in glory and were speaking of his departure, which he was about to accomplish at Jerusalem. (Luke 9:28-31)

*God spoke from the cloud: This is my Son, my Beloved/Chosen, whom I love; listen to him (see Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36; 2 Peter 1:16-18).*

*The Transfiguration, a pivotal event told around the middle of the Synoptic Gospels, marks the beginning of Jesus' final journey – to Jerusalem and death.*

*Jesus told his disciples three times about his approaching death and resurrection, but they did not comprehend. They were afraid to ask him about it:*

*First, at Caesarea Philippi (Matthew 16:21-28; Mark 8:31-38; Luke 9:21-27).*

*Second, in Galilee (Matthew 17:22-23; Mark 9:30-32; Luke 9:43-45).*

*Third, near Jerusalem (Matthew 20:17-19; Mark 10:32-34; Luke 18:31-34).*

*Here is Jesus' disciple Matthew's report of those three declarations by Jesus:*

### **Jesus Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

<sup>21</sup> From that time on, Jesus began to show his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and undergo great suffering at the hands of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and on the third day be raised. <sup>22</sup> And Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him, saying, 'God forbid it, Lord! This must never happen to you.' <sup>23</sup> But he turned and said to Peter, 'Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling-block to me; for you are setting your mind not on divine things but on human things.' (Matthew 16:21-23)

### **Jesus Again Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

As they were gathering in Galilee, Jesus said to them, 'The Son of Man is going to be betrayed into human hands, <sup>23</sup> and they will kill him, and on the third day he will be raised.' And they were greatly distressed. (Matthew 17:22-23)

### **A Third Time Jesus Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

While Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, he took the twelve disciples aside by themselves, and said to them on the way, <sup>18</sup>'See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and scribes, and they will condemn him to death; <sup>19</sup>then they will hand him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and flogged and crucified; and on the third day he will be raised.'

(Matthew 20:17-19)

*At Bethany on the eastern slopes of the Mount of Olives, Jesus foretold his approaching death after Mary anointed him with expensive perfume.*

### **Mary Anoints Jesus**

Six days before the Passover Jesus came to Bethany, the home of Lazarus, whom he had raised from the dead. <sup>2</sup>There they gave a dinner for him. Martha served, and Lazarus was one of those at the table with him. <sup>3</sup>Mary took a pound of costly perfume made of pure nard, anointed Jesus' feet, and wiped them with her hair. The house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume. <sup>4</sup>But Judas Iscariot, one of his disciples (the one who was about to betray him), said, <sup>5</sup>'Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and the money given to the poor?' <sup>6</sup>(He said this not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief; he kept the common purse and used to steal what was put into it.) <sup>7</sup>Jesus said, 'Leave her alone. She bought it so that she might keep it for the day of my burial. <sup>8</sup>You always have the poor with you, but you do not always have me.' (John 12:1-8).

*See also:*

By pouring this ointment on my body she has prepared me for burial.

(Matthew 26:12)

She has done what she could; she has anointed my body beforehand for its burial.

(Mark 14:8)

*So now we look at the events of Holy Week.*

## ***Holy Week***

*Holy week, from Jesus' triumphal entry into Jerusalem on Palm Sunday to his death and resurrection, is by far the greatest week in history.*

*Christians celebrate that week each year and the world joins in with Easter festivities, even for those unaware of the significance of Easter. In many countries the name given is a form of Pesach (English translation 'Passover'). Easter is the name for April in Old English.*

*Jesus, the Lamb of God, the Son of God, the Saviour of the world, chose to be crucified in Jerusalem at the Passover festival. He became our Passover Lamb, slain from the foundation of the world.*

*The Old Testament points to Jesus, the Messiah, God's Anointed One. The New Testament tells his story and calls us to respond in faith to his gift of salvation and eternal life.*

*The chart in Chapter 3 summarizes the main events of that momentous week in Jerusalem. Here I add a selection of significant Scripture passages which highlight events of that Holy Week. Due to different emphases in each gospel, the chronological order is not always clear. The tables are one possibility. This chronology and charts are adapted and used with permission from Believe: <http://mb-soft.com/believe/txh/gospogsp.htm>*

Another summary follows Mark's Gospel:

Palm Sunday - Day of Demonstration  
Mark 11:1-11 (Zech 9:9) - enters Jerusalem

Monday - Day of Authority  
Mark 11:12-19 - fig tree, temple cleansed

Tuesday - Day of Conflict  
Mark 11:20 - 13:36 - debates with leaders

Wednesday - Day of Preparation  
Mark 14:1-11 - anointed at Bethany

Thursday - Day of Farewell  
Mark 14:12-42 - last supper

Good Friday - Day of Crucifixion  
Mark 14:43 - 15:47 - trials and death

Saturday - Day of Sabbath  
Mark 16:1 - tomb sealed

Easter Sunday - Day of Resurrection  
Mark 16:1-18 - resurrection appearances

## ***Palm Sunday - Day of Demonstration***

Mark 11:1-11 (Zech 9:9) - Jesus enters Jerusalem

### **Jesus' Triumphal Entry into Jerusalem**

When they were approaching Jerusalem, at Bethphage and Bethany, near the Mount of Olives, he sent two of his disciples <sup>2</sup>and said to them, 'Go into the village ahead of you, and immediately as you enter it, you will find tied there a colt that has never been ridden; untie it and bring it. <sup>3</sup>If anyone says to you, "Why are you doing this?" just say this, "The Lord needs it and will send it back here immediately."' <sup>4</sup>They went away and found a colt tied near a door, outside in the street. As they were untying it, <sup>5</sup>some of the bystanders said to them, 'What are you doing, untying the colt?' <sup>6</sup>They told them what Jesus had said; and they allowed them to take it. <sup>7</sup>Then they brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it; and he sat on it. <sup>8</sup>Many people spread their cloaks on the road, and others spread leafy branches that they had cut in the fields. <sup>9</sup>Then those who went ahead and those who followed were shouting,

'Hosanna!

Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!

<sup>10</sup> Blessed is the coming kingdom of our ancestor David!

Hosanna in the highest heaven!'

<sup>11</sup>Then he entered Jerusalem and went into the temple; and when he had looked around at everything, as it was already late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve. (Mark 11:1-11)

This took place to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet, saying,

'Tell the daughter of Zion,  
Look, your king is coming to you,  
humble, and mounted on a donkey,  
and on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'

(Matthew 21:4-5; see Zechariah 9:9)

The crowds that went ahead of him and that followed were shouting,

'Hosanna to the Son of David!

Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!

Hosanna in the highest heaven!'

(Matthew 21:9; see Mark 11:10-11; Luke 19:38; Psalm 118:25-26)

Jesus said to them, 'Yes; have you never read,

"Out of the mouths of infants and nursing babies  
you have prepared praise for yourself"?''

(Matthew 21:16; see Psalm 8:2)

## **Monday - Day of Authority**

Mark 11:12-19 - fig tree, temple cleansed

### **Jesus Curses the Fig Tree**

On the following day, when they came from Bethany, he was hungry. <sup>13</sup> Seeing in the distance a fig tree in leaf, he went to see whether perhaps he would find anything on it. When he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs. <sup>14</sup> He said to it, 'May no one ever eat fruit from you again.' And his disciples heard it.

### **Jesus Cleanses the Temple**

Then they came to Jerusalem. And he entered the temple and began to drive out those who were selling and those who were buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money-changers and the seats of those who sold doves; <sup>16</sup> and he would not allow anyone to carry anything through the temple. <sup>17</sup> He was teaching and saying, 'Is it not written,

"My house shall be called a house of prayer for all the nations"?

But you have made it a den of robbers.'

<sup>18</sup> And when the chief priests and the scribes heard it, they kept looking for a way to kill him; for they were afraid of him, because the whole crowd was spellbound by his teaching. <sup>19</sup> And when evening came, Jesus and his disciples went out of the city. (Mark 11:12-19)

Then Jesus entered the temple and drove out all who were selling and buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money-changers and the seats of those who sold doves. <sup>13</sup> He said to them,

'It is written,

"My house shall be called a house of prayer";

but you are making it a den of robbers.'

(Matthew 21:12-13; see Mark 11:15-18; Luke 19:45-48; John 2:13-17; Isaiah 56:7; Jeremiah 7:11)

Each day Jesus was teaching at the temple, and each evening he went out to spend the night on the hill called the Mount of Olives, <sup>38</sup> and all the people came early in the morning to hear him at the temple. (Luke 21:15 NIV)



## ***Tuesday - Day of Conflict***

Mark 11:20 - 13:36 - debates with leaders

### **The Lesson from the Withered Fig Tree**

In the morning as they passed by, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots. <sup>21</sup> Then Peter remembered and said to him, 'Rabbi, look! The fig tree that you cursed has withered.' <sup>22</sup> Jesus answered them, 'Have faith in God. <sup>23</sup> Truly I tell you, if you say to this mountain, "Be taken up and thrown into the sea", and if you do not doubt in your heart, but believe that what you say will come to pass, it will be done for you. <sup>24</sup> So I tell you, whatever you ask for in prayer, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours.

<sup>25</sup> 'Whenever you stand praying, forgive, if you have anything against anyone; so that your Father in heaven may also forgive you your trespasses.'

### **Jesus' Authority Is Questioned**

Again they came to Jerusalem. As he was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him <sup>28</sup> and said, 'By what authority are you doing these things? Who gave you this authority to do them?' <sup>29</sup> Jesus said to them, 'I will ask you one question; answer me, and I will tell you by what authority I do these things. <sup>30</sup> Did the baptism of John come from heaven, or was it of human origin? Answer me.' <sup>31</sup> They argued with one another, 'If we say, "From heaven", he will say, "Why then did you not believe him?"' <sup>32</sup> But shall we say, "Of human origin"?'—they were afraid of the crowd, for all regarded John as truly a prophet. <sup>33</sup> So they answered Jesus, 'We do not know.' And Jesus said to them, 'Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things.' (Mark 11:20-33)

### **The Question about the Resurrection**

Some Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him and asked him a question, ... <sup>24</sup> Jesus said to them, 'Is not this the reason you are wrong, that you know neither the scriptures nor the power of God? (Mark 12:18, 24)

### **The First Commandment**

One of the scribes came near and heard them disputing with one another, and seeing that he answered them well, he asked him, 'Which commandment is the first of all?' <sup>29</sup> Jesus answered, "The first is, "Hear, O Israel: the Lord our God, the Lord is one; <sup>30</sup> you shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind, and with all your strength." <sup>31</sup> The second is this, "You shall love your neighbour as yourself." There is no other commandment greater than these.' <sup>32</sup> Then the scribe said to him, 'You are right, Teacher; you have truly said that "he is one, and besides him there is no other"; <sup>33</sup> and "to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the strength", and "to love one's neighbour as oneself",—this is much more important than all whole burnt-offerings and sacrifices.' <sup>34</sup> When

## *The Lion of Judah*

Jesus saw that he answered wisely, he said to him, 'You are not far from the kingdom of God.' After that no one dared to ask him any question.  
(Mark 12:28-34)

### **Concerning The parable of the tenants**

Jesus said to them, 'Have you never read in the scriptures:

"The stone that the builders rejected  
has become the cornerstone;  
this was the Lord's doing,  
and it is amazing in our eyes"?

(Matthew 21:42; see Mark 12:10-11; Luke 20:17; Psalm 118:22-23)

### **The Destruction of the Temple Foretold**

As he came out of the temple, one of his disciples said to him, 'Look, Teacher, what large stones and what large buildings!' <sup>2</sup>Then Jesus asked him, 'Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left here upon another; all will be thrown down.'

<sup>3</sup>When he was sitting on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately, <sup>4</sup>"Tell us, when will this be, and what will be the sign that all these things are about to be accomplished?" <sup>5</sup>Then Jesus began to say to them, 'Beware that no one leads you astray. <sup>6</sup>Many will come in my name and say, "I am he!" and they will lead many astray. <sup>7</sup>When you hear of wars and rumours of wars, do not be alarmed; this must take place, but the end is still to come. <sup>8</sup>For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; there will be earthquakes in various places; there will be famines. This is but the beginning of the birth pangs.

(Mark 13:1-8)

### **The Coming of the Son of Man**

But in those days, after that suffering,  
the sun will be darkened,

and the moon will not give its light,

<sup>25</sup> and the stars will be falling from heaven,

and the powers in the heavens will be shaken.

<sup>26</sup> Then they will see "the Son of Man coming in clouds" with great power and glory.

<sup>27</sup> Then he will send out the angels, and gather his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of heaven. (Mark 13:24-27)

And this good news of the kingdom will be proclaimed throughout the world, as a testimony to all the nations; and then the end will come. (Matthew 24:14)

## **Wednesday - Day of Preparation**

Mark 14:1-11 - anointed at Bethany

### **The Plot to Kill Jesus**

It was two days before the Passover and the festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were looking for a way to arrest Jesus by stealth and kill him; <sup>2</sup> for they said, 'Not during the festival, or there may be a riot among the people.'

### **The Anointing at Bethany**

While he was at Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he sat at the table, a woman came with an alabaster jar of very costly ointment of nard, and she broke open the jar and poured the ointment on his head. <sup>4</sup> But some were there who said to one another in anger, 'Why was the ointment wasted in this way? <sup>5</sup> For this ointment could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and the money given to the poor.' And they scolded her. <sup>6</sup> But Jesus said, 'Let her alone; why do you trouble her? She has performed a good service for me. <sup>7</sup> For you always have the poor with you, and you can show kindness to them whenever you wish; but you will not always have me. <sup>8</sup> She has done what she could; she has anointed my body beforehand for its burial. <sup>9</sup> Truly I tell you, wherever the good news is proclaimed in the whole world, what she has done will be told in remembrance of her.'

### **Judas Agrees to Betray Jesus**

Then Judas Iscariot, who was one of the twelve, went to the chief priests in order to betray him to them. <sup>11</sup> When they heard it, they were greatly pleased, and promised to give him money. So he began to look for an opportunity to betray him. (Mark 14:1-11)

## ***Thursday - Day of Farewell***

Mark 14:12-42 - last supper

### **The Passover with the Disciples**

On the first day of Unleavened Bread, when the Passover lamb is sacrificed, his disciples said to him, 'Where do you want us to go and make the preparations for you to eat the Passover?' <sup>13</sup> So he sent two of his disciples, saying to them, 'Go into the city, and a man carrying a jar of water will meet you; follow him, <sup>14</sup> and wherever he enters, say to the owner of the house, "The Teacher asks, Where is my guest room where I may eat the Passover with my disciples?" <sup>15</sup> He will show you a large room upstairs, furnished and ready. Make preparations for us there.' <sup>16</sup> So the disciples set out and went to the city, and found everything as he had told them; and they prepared the Passover meal.

<sup>17</sup> When it was evening, he came with the twelve. <sup>18</sup> And when they had taken their places and were eating, Jesus said, 'Truly I tell you, one of you will betray me, one who is eating with me.' <sup>19</sup> They began to be distressed and to say to him one after another, 'Surely, not I?' <sup>20</sup> He said to them, 'It is one of the twelve, one who is dipping bread into the bowl with me. <sup>21</sup> For the Son of Man goes as it is written of him, but woe to that one by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for that one not to have been born.' (Mark 14:12-21)

### **The Institution of the Lord's Supper**

While they were eating, he took a loaf of bread, and after blessing it he broke it, gave it to them, and said, 'Take; this is my body.' <sup>23</sup> Then he took a cup, and after giving thanks he gave it to them, and all of them drank from it. <sup>24</sup> He said to them, 'This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many. <sup>25</sup> Truly I tell you, I will never again drink of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God.' (Mark 14:22-25)

### **The Dispute about Greatness**

A dispute also arose among them as to which one of them was to be regarded as the greatest. <sup>25</sup> But he said to them, 'The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them; and those in authority over them are called benefactors. <sup>26</sup> But not so with you; rather the greatest among you must become like the youngest, and the leader like one who serves. <sup>27</sup> For who is greater, the one who is at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one at the table? But I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:24-27)

### **Jesus Washes the Disciples' Feet**

Now before the Feast of the Passover, when Jesus knew that His hour had come that He should depart from this world to the Father, having loved His own who were in the world, He loved them to the end.

<sup>2</sup> And supper being ended, the devil having already put it into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's *son*, to betray Him, <sup>3</sup> Jesus, knowing that the Father had given all things into His hands, and that He had come from God and was going to God, <sup>4</sup> rose from supper and laid aside His garments, took a towel and girded Himself. <sup>5</sup> After that,

He poured water into a basin and began to wash the disciples' feet, and to wipe *them* with the towel with which He was girded. ...

<sup>12</sup> So when He had washed their feet, taken His garments, and sat down again, He said to them, "Do you know what I have done to you? <sup>13</sup> You call Me Teacher and Lord, and you say well, for so I am. <sup>14</sup> If I then, *your* Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another's feet. <sup>15</sup> For I have given you an example, that you should do as I have done to you. <sup>16</sup> Most assuredly, I say to you, a servant is not greater than his master; nor is he who is sent greater than he who sent him. <sup>17</sup> If you know these things, blessed are you if you do them. (John 13:1-5, 12-17 NKJV)

### **The New Commandment**

Little children, I am with you only a little longer. You will look for me; and as I said to the Jews so now I say to you, "Where I am going, you cannot come." <sup>34</sup> I give you a new commandment, that you love one another. Just as I have loved you, you also should love one another. <sup>35</sup> By this everyone will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.' (John 13:33-35)

### **Jesus the Way to the Father**

'Do not let your hearts be troubled. Believe in God, believe also in me. <sup>2</sup> In my Father's house there are many dwelling-places. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you? <sup>3</sup> And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, so that where I am, there you may be also. <sup>4</sup> And you know the way to the place where I am going.' <sup>5</sup> Thomas said to him, 'Lord, we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?' <sup>6</sup> Jesus said to him, 'I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. <sup>7</sup> If you know me, you will know my Father also. From now on you do know him and have seen him.' (John 14:1-7)

### **The Promise of the Holy Spirit**

'If you love me, you will keep my commandments. <sup>16</sup> And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate, to be with you for ever. <sup>17</sup> This is the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, because he abides with you, and he will be in you. (John 14:15-17)

### **Jesus Prays for His Disciples**

After Jesus had spoken these words, he looked up to heaven and said, 'Father, the hour has come; glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you, <sup>2</sup> since you have given him authority over all people, to give eternal life to all whom you have given him. <sup>3</sup> And this is eternal life, that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent. <sup>4</sup> I glorified you on earth by finishing the work that you gave me to do. <sup>5</sup> So now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had in your presence before the world existed.

'I ask not only on behalf of these, but also on behalf of those who will believe in me through their word, <sup>21</sup> that they may all be one. As you, Father, are in me and I am in you, may they also be in us, so that the world may believe that you have sent me. (John 17:15, 20-21)

### **Peter's Denial Foretold**

When they had sung the hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives. <sup>27</sup> And Jesus said to them, 'You will all become deserters; for it is written,

"I will strike the shepherd,  
and the sheep will be scattered."

<sup>28</sup> But after I am raised up, I will go before you to Galilee.' <sup>29</sup> Peter said to him, 'Even though all become deserters, I will not.' <sup>30</sup> Jesus said to him, 'Truly I tell you, this day, this very night, before the cock crows twice, you will deny me three times.' <sup>31</sup> But he said vehemently, 'Even though I must die with you, I will not deny you.' And all of them said the same. (Mark 14:26-31)

### **Jesus Prays in Gethsemane**

They went to a place called Gethsemane; and he said to his disciples, 'Sit here while I pray.' <sup>33</sup> He took with him Peter and James and John, and began to be distressed and agitated. <sup>34</sup> And he said to them, 'I am deeply grieved, even to death; remain here, and keep awake.' <sup>35</sup> And going a little farther, he threw himself on the ground and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. <sup>36</sup> He said, 'Abba, Father, for you all things are possible; remove this cup from me; yet, not what I want, but what you want.' <sup>37</sup> He came and found them sleeping; and he said to Peter, 'Simon, are you asleep? Could you not keep awake one hour? <sup>38</sup> Keep awake and pray that you may not come into the time of trial; the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.' <sup>39</sup> And again he went away and prayed, saying the same words. <sup>40</sup> And once more he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were very heavy; and they did not know what to say to him. <sup>41</sup> He came a third time and said to them, 'Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Enough! The hour has come; the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. <sup>42</sup> Get up, let us be going. See, my betrayer is at hand.'

(Mark 14 32-42)

### **The Betrayal and Arrest of Jesus**

Immediately, while he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived; and with him there was a crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders. <sup>44</sup> Now the betrayer had given them a sign, saying, 'The one I will kiss is the man; arrest him and lead him away under guard.' <sup>45</sup> So when he came, he went up to him at once and said, 'Rabbi!' and kissed him. <sup>46</sup> Then they laid hands on him and arrested him. <sup>47</sup> But one of those who stood near drew his sword and struck the slave of the high priest, cutting off his ear. <sup>48</sup> Then Jesus said to them, 'Have you come out with swords and clubs to arrest me as though I were a bandit? <sup>49</sup> Day after day I was with you in the temple teaching, and you did not arrest me. But let the scriptures be fulfilled.' <sup>50</sup> All of them deserted him and fled. (Mark 14:43-50)

## **Good Friday - Day of Crucifixion**

Mark 14:43 – 15:47 - trials and death

### **Jesus before the Council**

They took Jesus to the high priest; and all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes were assembled. <sup>54</sup> Peter had followed him at a distance, right into the courtyard of the high priest; and he was sitting with the guards, warming himself at the fire. <sup>55</sup> Now the chief priests and the whole council were looking for testimony against Jesus to put him to death; but they found none. <sup>56</sup> For many gave false testimony against him, and their testimony did not agree. <sup>57</sup> Some stood up and gave false testimony against him, saying, <sup>58</sup> 'We heard him say, "I will destroy this temple that is made with hands, and in three days I will build another, not made with hands."' <sup>59</sup> But even on this point their testimony did not agree. <sup>60</sup> Then the high priest stood up before them and asked Jesus, 'Have you no answer? What is it that they testify against you?' <sup>61</sup> But he was silent and did not answer. Again the high priest asked him, 'Are you the Messiah, the Son of the Blessed One?' <sup>62</sup> Jesus said, 'I am; and "you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Power", and "coming with the clouds of heaven."' "

<sup>63</sup> Then the high priest tore his clothes and said, 'Why do we still need witnesses? <sup>64</sup> You have heard his blasphemy! What is your decision?' All of them condemned him as deserving death. <sup>65</sup> Some began to spit on him, to blindfold him, and to strike him, saying to him, 'Prophecy!' The guards also took him over and beat him. (Mark 14:53-65)

### **Jesus before Pilate**

As soon as it was morning, the chief priests held a consultation with the elders and scribes and the whole council. They bound Jesus, led him away, and handed him over to Pilate. <sup>2</sup> Pilate asked him, 'Are you the King of the Jews?' He answered him, 'You say so.' <sup>3</sup> Then the chief priests accused him of many things. <sup>4</sup> Pilate asked him again, 'Have you no answer? See how many charges they bring against you.' <sup>5</sup> But Jesus made no further reply, so that Pilate was amazed. (Mark 15:1-5)

### **Jesus before Herod**

When Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean. <sup>7</sup> And when he learned that he was under Herod's jurisdiction, he sent him off to Herod, who was himself in Jerusalem at that time. <sup>8</sup> When Herod saw Jesus, he was very glad, for he had been wanting to see him for a long time, because he had heard about him and was hoping to see him perform some sign. <sup>9</sup> He questioned him at some length, but Jesus gave him no answer. <sup>10</sup> The chief priests and the scribes stood by, vehemently accusing him. <sup>11</sup> Even Herod with his soldiers treated him with contempt and mocked him; then he put an elegant robe on him, and sent him back to Pilate. <sup>12</sup> That same day Herod and Pilate became friends with each other; before this they had been enemies. (Luke 23:6-12)

### **Pilate Hands Jesus over to Be Crucified**

Now at the festival he used to release a prisoner for them, anyone for whom they asked. <sup>7</sup> Now a man called Barabbas was in prison with the rebels who had committed murder during the insurrection. ... <sup>15</sup> So Pilate, wishing to satisfy the crowd, released Barabbas for them; and after flogging Jesus, he handed him over to be crucified. (Mark 15:6-7, 15)

### **The Soldiers Mock Jesus**

Then the soldiers led him into the courtyard of the palace (that is, the governor's headquarters); and they called together the whole cohort. <sup>17</sup> And they clothed him in a purple cloak; and after twisting some thorns into a crown, they put it on him. <sup>18</sup> And they began saluting him, 'Hail, King of the Jews!' <sup>19</sup> They struck his head with a reed, spat upon him, and knelt down in homage to him. <sup>20</sup> After mocking him, they stripped him of the purple cloak and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him out to crucify him.

(Mark 15:16-20)

### **The Crucifixion of Jesus**

They compelled a passer-by, who was coming in from the country, to carry his cross; it was Simon of Cyrene, the father of Alexander and Rufus. <sup>22</sup> Then they brought Jesus to the place called Golgotha (which means the place of a skull). <sup>23</sup> And they offered him wine mixed with myrrh; but he did not take it. <sup>24</sup> And they crucified him, and divided his clothes among them, casting lots to decide what each should take.

<sup>25</sup> It was nine o'clock in the morning when they crucified him. <sup>26</sup> The inscription of the charge against him read, 'The King of the Jews.' <sup>27</sup> And with him they crucified two bandits, one on his right and one on his left. <sup>29</sup> Those who passed by derided him, shaking their heads and saying, 'Aha! You who would destroy the temple and build it in three days, <sup>30</sup> save yourself, and come down from the cross!' <sup>31</sup> In the same way the chief priests, along with the scribes, were also mocking him among themselves and saying, 'He saved others; he cannot save himself. <sup>32</sup> Let the Messiah, the King of Israel, come down from the cross now, so that we may see and believe.' Those who were crucified with him also taunted him. (Mark 15:21-32)

This was to fulfil what the scripture says, 'They divided my clothes among themselves, and for my clothing they cast lots'

(John 19:24; see Psalm 22:18)

These things occurred so that the scripture might be fulfilled, 'None of his bones shall be broken.'<sup>37</sup> And again another passage of scripture says, 'They will look on the one whom they have pierced.'

(John 19:36-37; see Psalm 34:20; 22:16; Zechariah 12:10)



### **The Death of Jesus**

When it was noon, darkness came over the whole land until three in the afternoon. <sup>34</sup> At three o'clock Jesus cried out with a loud voice, 'Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani?' which means, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' <sup>35</sup> When some of the bystanders heard it, they said, 'Listen, he is calling for Elijah.' <sup>36</sup> And someone ran, filled a sponge with sour wine, put it on a stick, and gave it to him to drink, saying, 'Wait, let us see whether Elijah will come to take him down.' <sup>37</sup> Then Jesus gave a loud cry and breathed his last. <sup>38</sup> And the curtain of the temple was torn in two, from top to bottom. <sup>39</sup> Now when the centurion, who stood facing him, saw that in this way he breathed his last, he said, 'Truly this man was God's Son!'

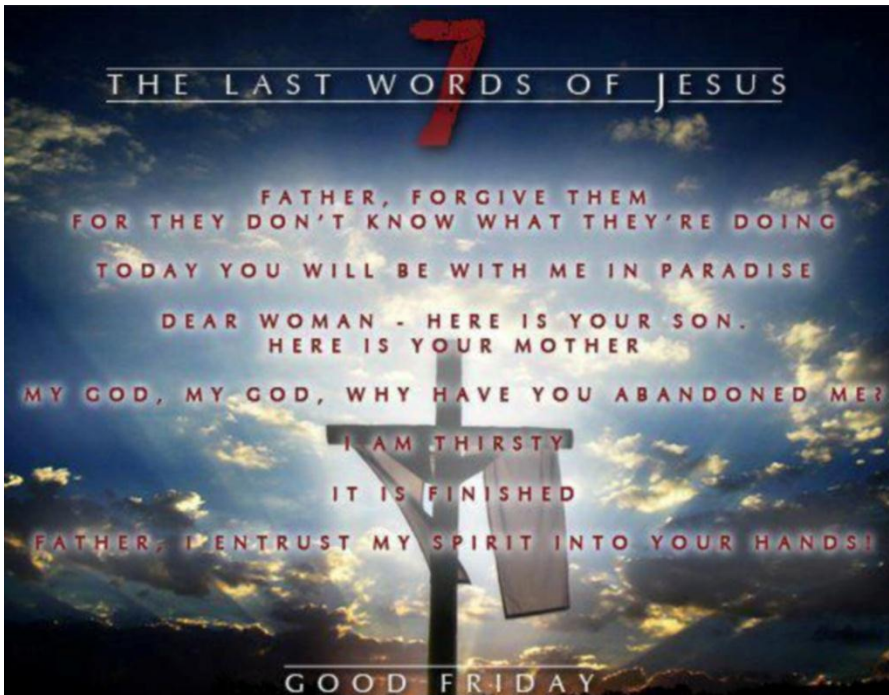
<sup>40</sup> There were also women looking on from a distance; among them were Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James the younger and of Joses, and Salome. <sup>41</sup> These used to follow him and provided for him when he was in Galilee; and there were many other women who had come up with him to Jerusalem. (Mark 15:33-41)

*Matthew gives further details.*

And about three o'clock Jesus cried with a loud voice, 'Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?' that is, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' <sup>47</sup> When some of the bystanders heard it, they said, 'This man is calling for Elijah.' <sup>48</sup> At once one of them ran and got a sponge, filled it with sour wine, put it on a stick, and gave it to him to drink. <sup>49</sup> But the others said, 'Wait, let us see whether Elijah will come to save him.' <sup>50</sup> Then Jesus cried again with a loud voice and breathed his last. <sup>51</sup> At that moment the curtain of the temple was torn in two, from top to bottom. The earth shook, and the rocks were split. <sup>52</sup> The tombs also were opened, and many bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised. <sup>53</sup> After his resurrection they came out of the tombs and entered the holy city and appeared to many. (Matthew 27:46-53)

### **The Burial of Jesus**

It was Preparation Day (that is, the day before the Sabbath). So as evening approached, <sup>43</sup> Joseph of Arimathea, a prominent member of the Council, who was himself waiting for the kingdom of God, went boldly to Pilate and asked for Jesus' body. <sup>44</sup> Pilate was surprised to hear that he was already dead. Summoning the centurion, he asked him if Jesus had already died. <sup>45</sup> When he learned from the centurion that it was so, he gave the body to Joseph. <sup>46</sup> So Joseph bought some linen cloth, took down the body, wrapped it in the linen, and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb. <sup>47</sup> Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joseph saw where he was laid. (Mark 15:42-47 NIV)



### ***Seven Statements on the Cross***

1. *Father forgive them, for they know not what they do* (Luke 23:34).
2. *Truly, I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise* (Luke 23:43).
3. *Woman, behold your son: behold your mother* (John 19:26-27).
4. *My God, My God, why have you forsaken me*, (Matthew 27:46 and Mark 15:34; see Ps 22:1).
5. *I thirst* (John 19:28).
6. *It is finished* (John 19:30).
7. *Father, into your hands I commit my spirit* (Luke 23:46; see Psalm 31:5).

This summary uses NKJV. The Mounce translation ([www.biblegateway.com](http://www.biblegateway.com)) of John 19:30 is 'It is accomplished.' Traditionally, these seven statements are called words of

1. *Forgiveness,*
2. *Salvation,*
3. *Relationship,*
4. *Abandonment,*
5. *Distress,*
6. *Triumph,* and
7. *Reunion.*

## ***Contexts of the Seven Statements on the Cross***

When they came to the place called the Skull, they crucified him there, along with the criminals – one on his right, the other on his left. <sup>34</sup>Jesus said, **'Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing.'** (Luke 23:34 NIV)

There was a written notice above him, which read: THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS.

<sup>39</sup> One of the criminals who hung there hurled insults at him: 'Aren't you the Messiah? Save yourself and us!'

<sup>40</sup> But the other criminal rebuked him. 'Don't you fear God,' he said, 'since you are under the same sentence? <sup>41</sup> We are punished justly, for we are getting what our deeds deserve. But this man has done nothing wrong.'

<sup>42</sup> Then he said, 'Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom.'

<sup>43</sup> Jesus answered him, **'Truly I tell you, today you will be with me in paradise.'** (Luke 23:42-43 NIV)

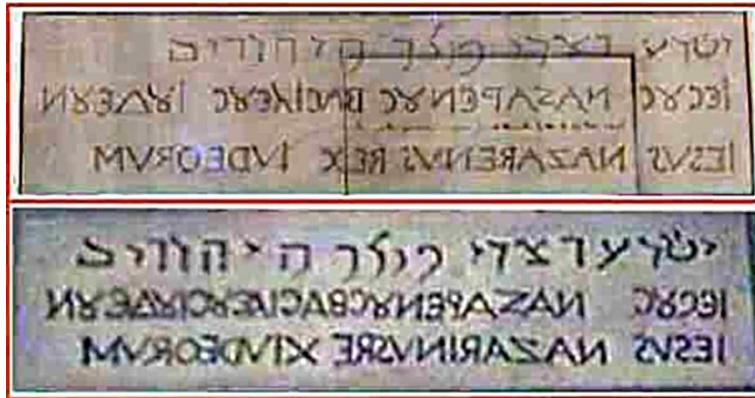
Near the cross of Jesus stood his mother, his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene. <sup>26</sup> When Jesus saw his mother there, and the disciple whom he loved standing near by, he said to her, **'Woman, here is your son,'** <sup>27</sup> and to the disciple, **'Here is your mother.'** From that time on, this disciple took her into his home. (John 19:25-27 NIV)

From noon on, darkness came over the whole land <sup>[a]</sup> until three in the afternoon. <sup>46</sup> And about three o'clock Jesus cried with a loud voice, 'Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?' that is, **'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?'** (Matthew 27:45-46; see Ps 22:1)

Later, knowing that everything had now been finished, and so that Scripture would be fulfilled, Jesus said, **'I am thirsty.'** <sup>29</sup> A jar of wine vinegar was there, so they soaked a sponge in it, put the sponge on a stalk of the hyssop plant, and lifted it to Jesus' lips. (John 19:28-29 NIV)

When he had received the drink, Jesus said, **'It is finished.'** With that, he bowed his head and gave up his spirit. (John 19:30 NIV; see Ps 31:5))

It was now about noon, and darkness came over the whole land until three in the afternoon, <sup>45</sup> for the sun stopped shining. And the curtain of the temple was torn in two. <sup>46</sup> Jesus called out with a loud voice, **'Father, into your hands I commit my spirit.'** When he had said this, he breathed his last. (Luke 23:46 NIV; see Psalm 31:5)



Ancient inscription reputedly found in Golgotha tomb by St Helena, 326AD,  
25cm walnut wood sign (top), enhanced script (bottom).  
In Hebrew, Greek and Latin, from right to left (Hebrew style)  
JESUS OF NAZARETH KING OF THE JEWS



*Tam ve'nishlam* - "It is finished", are the first two words of the Hebrew phrase, "Tam ve'nishlam Shevach La'el Boreh Olam", which means, "It is completed and fulfilled, blessed be God, the Creator of the world." The acronym for this phrase, תושלביע is written at the end of sacred Jewish writings such as books of the Bible. Thus Jesus declared that he had completed and fulfilled everything God had purposed since the creation of the world.

Source: [http://www.wildolive.co.uk/the\\_cross.htm](http://www.wildolive.co.uk/the_cross.htm)

***It is finished - accomplished - completed - achieved - consummated - ended - done***

## ***Saturday - Day of Sabbath***

Mark 15:46-47 - tomb sealed

### **The burial of Jesus**

So Joseph bought some linen cloth, took down the body, wrapped it in the linen, and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb. <sup>47</sup> Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joseph saw where he was laid. (Mark 15:46-47 NIV)

The women who had come with Jesus from Galilee followed Joseph and saw the tomb and how his body was laid in it. <sup>56</sup> Then they went home and prepared spices and perfumes. But they rested on the Sabbath in obedience to the commandment. (Luke 23:54 NIV)

### **The Guard at the Tomb**

The next day, that is, after the day of Preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered before Pilate <sup>63</sup> and said, 'Sir, we remember what that impostor said while he was still alive, "After three days I will rise again." <sup>64</sup> Therefore command that the tomb be made secure until the third day; otherwise his disciples may go and steal him away, and tell the people, "He has been raised from the dead", and the last deception would be worse than the first.' <sup>65</sup> Pilate said to them, 'You have a guard of soldiers; go, make it as secure as you can.' <sup>66</sup> So they went with the guard and made the tomb secure by sealing the stone. (Luke 23:62:66 NIV)

### **Christ's Suffering and Ours**

For Christ also suffered once for sins, the just for the unjust, that He might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive by the Spirit, <sup>19</sup> by whom also He went and preached to the spirits in prison, <sup>20</sup> who formerly were disobedient, when once the Divine longsuffering waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was being prepared, in which a few, that is, eight souls, were saved through water. <sup>21</sup> There is also an antitype which now saves us—baptism (not the removal of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God), through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, <sup>22</sup> who has gone into heaven and is at the right hand of God, angels and authorities and powers having been made subject to Him.

(1 Peter 3:18-22 NKJV)

## ***Easter Sunday - Day of Resurrection***

Mark 16:1-18 - resurrection appearances

### **The Resurrection of Jesus**

When the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices so that they might go to anoint Jesus' body. <sup>2</sup>Very early on the first day of the week, just after sunrise, they were on their way to the tomb <sup>3</sup>and they asked each other, 'Who will roll the stone away from the entrance of the tomb?'

<sup>4</sup>But when they looked up, they saw that the stone, which was very large, had been rolled away. <sup>5</sup>As they entered the tomb, they saw a young man dressed in a white robe sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

<sup>6</sup>'Don't be alarmed,' he said. 'You are looking for Jesus the Nazarene, who was crucified. He has risen! He is not here. See the place where they laid him. <sup>7</sup>But go, tell his disciples and Peter, "He is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you."'

<sup>8</sup>Trembling and bewildered, the women went out and fled from the tomb. They said nothing to anyone, because they were afraid.

(Mark 16:1-8 NIV)

After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to look at the tomb.

<sup>2</sup>There was a violent earthquake, for an angel of the Lord came down from heaven and, going to the tomb, rolled back the stone and sat on it. <sup>3</sup>His appearance was like lightning, and his clothes were white as snow. <sup>4</sup>The guards were so afraid of him that they shook and became like dead men.

<sup>5</sup>The angel said to the women, 'Do not be afraid, for I know that you are looking for Jesus, who was crucified. <sup>6</sup>He is not here; he has risen, just as he said. Come and see the place where he lay. <sup>7</sup>Then go quickly and tell his disciples: "He has risen from the dead and is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him." Now I have told you.'

<sup>8</sup>So the women hurried away from the tomb, afraid yet filled with joy, and ran to tell his disciples. <sup>9</sup>Suddenly Jesus met them. 'Greetings,' he said. They came to him, clasped his feet and worshipped him. <sup>10</sup>Then Jesus said to them, 'Do not be afraid. Go and tell my brothers to go to Galilee; there they will see me.'

(Matthew 28:1-10 NIV)

Early on the first day of the week, while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene came to the tomb and saw that the stone had been removed from the tomb. <sup>2</sup>So she ran and went to Simon Peter and the other disciple, the one whom Jesus loved, and said to them, 'They have taken the Lord out of the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid him.' <sup>3</sup>Then Peter and the other disciple set out and went towards the tomb. <sup>4</sup>The two were running together, but the other disciple outran Peter and reached the tomb first. <sup>5</sup>He bent down to look in and saw the linen wrappings lying there, but he did not go in. <sup>6</sup>Then Simon Peter came, following him, and went into the tomb. He saw the linen wrappings lying there, <sup>7</sup>and the cloth that had been on Jesus' head, not lying with the linen wrappings but rolled up in a place by itself. <sup>8</sup>Then the other disciple, who reached the tomb first, also went in, and he saw and believed; <sup>9</sup>for as yet they did not

understand the scripture, that he must rise from the dead. <sup>10</sup> Then the disciples returned to their homes. (John 20:1-9)

### **Jesus Appears to Mary Magdalene**

But Mary stood weeping outside the tomb. As she wept, she bent over to look into the tomb; <sup>12</sup> and she saw two angels in white, sitting where the body of Jesus had been lying, one at the head and the other at the feet. <sup>13</sup> They said to her, 'Woman, why are you weeping?' She said to them, 'They have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid him.' <sup>14</sup> When she had said this, she turned round and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not know that it was Jesus. <sup>15</sup> Jesus said to her, 'Woman, why are you weeping? For whom are you looking?' Supposing him to be the gardener, she said to him, 'Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away.' <sup>16</sup> Jesus said to her, 'Mary!' She turned and said to him in Hebrew, 'Rabbouni!' (which means Teacher). <sup>17</sup> Jesus said to her, 'Do not hold on to me, because I have not yet ascended to the Father. But go to my brothers and say to them, "I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God."' <sup>18</sup> Mary Magdalene went and announced to the disciples, 'I have seen the Lord'; and she told them that he had said these things to her. (John 20:11-18)

### **Jesus Appears to the Disciples**

When it was evening on that day, the first day of the week, and the doors of the house where the disciples had met were locked for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood among them and said, 'Peace be with you.' <sup>20</sup> After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. Then the disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord. <sup>21</sup> Jesus said to them again, 'Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, so I send you.' <sup>22</sup> When he had said this, he breathed on them and said to them, 'Receive the Holy Spirit. <sup>23</sup> If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained.' (John 20:19-23)

'These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about me in the law of Moses, the prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup> and he said to them, 'Thus it is written, that the Messiah is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup> and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem. (Luke 24:44-47)

More details are given in the next chapter, *The Resurrection of Jesus*.

## ***The Resurrection and Ascension***

### **Resurrection Appearances**

#### **Resurrection Sunday**

Mary Magdalene - Mark 16:9, John 20:11-18

The Women - Matthew 28:9-10

Cleopas and friend, Emmaus Road - Mark 16:12-13, Luke 24:13-34

Simon Peter - Luke 24:34, 1 Corinthians 15:5

The Disciples, Upper Room - Mark 16:14, Luke 24:36-49, John 20:19-23,  
1 Corinthians 15:5

#### **40 Days - Acts 1:3**

Disciples with Thomas, one week later - John 20:24-29

500 at once - 1 Corinthians 15:6

James - 1 Corinthians 15:7

Galilee beach - John 21:1-25

Galilee Mountain - Matthew 28:16-20

Mount of Olives, Ascension - Acts 1:6-9

*Chapter 5, The Resurrection of Jesus, gives details of these passages.*



## **Reflections on Jesus' Death and Resurrection**

*In the cross of Christ I glory,  
towering o'er the wrecks of time;  
all the light of sacred story  
gathers round its head sublime.*

*Bane and blessing, pain and pleasure,  
by the cross are sanctified;  
peace is there that knows no measure,  
joys that through all time abide.*

(John Bowring, 1792-1872)

*The following reflections on the death of Jesus are brief selections from the New Testament and from a few other sources.*

### **New Testament**

*This brief selection of New Testament passages gives references to Jesus' death on the cross with key statements highlighted in bold print.*

*Peter, preaching on the Day of Pentecost and speaking to the religious leaders showed how Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

For David says concerning him,

"I saw the Lord always before me,

for he is at my right hand so that I will not be shaken;

<sup>26</sup> therefore my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced;  
moreover, my flesh will live in hope.

<sup>27</sup> For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,

**or let your Holy One experience corruption.**

<sup>28</sup> You have made known to me the ways of life;

you will make me full of gladness with your presence."

(Acts 2:25-28; see Psalm 16:8-11)

In this way God fulfilled what he had foretold through all the prophets, that **his Messiah would suffer**. <sup>19</sup> Repent therefore, and turn to God so that your sins may be wiped out, <sup>20</sup> so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that he may send the Messiah appointed for you, that is, Jesus, <sup>21</sup> who must remain in heaven until the time of universal restoration that God announced long ago through his holy prophets.

(Acts 3:18-21; see Deuteronomy 18:15, 18-19; Genesis 22:18; 26:4; 28:14).

## *The Lion of Judah*

*The early church drew on the Messianic Scriptures in their praying.*

‘Sovereign Lord, who made the heaven and the earth, the sea, and everything in them,  
<sup>25</sup> it is you who said by the Holy Spirit through our ancestor David, your servant:

“Why did the Gentiles rage,  
and the peoples imagine vain things?

<sup>26</sup> The kings of the earth took their stand,  
and the rulers have gathered together  
**against the Lord and against his Messiah.”**

(Acts 4:24-26; see Psalm 2:1-2)

*Philip explained the Scriptures about the Messiah to the Ethiopian.*

Now the passage of the scripture that he was reading was this:

**‘Like a sheep he was led to the slaughter,  
and like a lamb silent before its shearer,  
so he does not open his mouth.**

<sup>33</sup> In his humiliation justice was denied him.  
Who can describe his generation?

For his life is taken away from the earth.’

<sup>34</sup> The eunuch asked Philip, ‘About whom, may I ask you, does the prophet say this,  
about himself or about someone else?’ <sup>35</sup> Then Philip began to speak, and starting with  
this scripture, he proclaimed to him the good news about Jesus. (Acts 8:32-35; see  
Isaiah 53:7-8)

*Paul and others proclaimed the power of Jesus’ death and resurrection.*

For Christ did not send me to baptise, but to preach the gospel – not with wisdom and  
eloquence, **lest the cross of Christ be emptied of its power.** <sup>18</sup> For **the message of  
the cross** is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is  
the power of God. (1 Corinthians 1:17-18 NIV)

### **Imitating Christ’s Humility**

Let the same mind be in you that was in Christ Jesus,

<sup>6</sup> who, though he was in the form of God,  
did not regard equality with God  
as something to be exploited,

<sup>7</sup> but emptied himself,  
taking the form of a slave,  
being born in human likeness.

And being found in human form,

<sup>8</sup> he humbled himself  
and became obedient to the point of death—  
**even death on a cross.**

<sup>9</sup>Therefore God also highly exalted him  
and gave him the name  
that is above every name,  
<sup>10</sup>so that at the name of Jesus  
every knee should bend,  
in heaven and on earth and under the earth,  
<sup>11</sup>and every tongue should confess  
that Jesus Christ is Lord,  
to the glory of God the Father.  
(Philippians 2:5-11)

### **The Supremacy of Christ**

He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation; <sup>16</sup>for in him all things in heaven and on earth were created, things visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or powers—all things have been created through him and for him. <sup>17</sup>He himself is before all things, and in him all things hold together. <sup>18</sup>He is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, so that he might come to have first place in everything. <sup>19</sup>For in him all the fullness of God was pleased to dwell, <sup>20</sup>and through him God was pleased to reconcile to himself all things, whether on earth or in heaven, by **making peace through the blood of his cross**.  
(Colossians 1:15-20)

When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your flesh, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins, <sup>14</sup>having cancelled the charge of our legal indebtedness, which stood against us and condemned us; he has taken it away, **nailing it to the cross**. <sup>15</sup>And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, **triumphing over them by the cross**. (Colossians 2:13-15)

### **God Has Spoken by His Son**

Long ago God spoke to our ancestors in many and various ways by the prophets, <sup>2</sup>but in these last days he has spoken to us by a Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, through whom he also created the worlds. <sup>3</sup>He is the reflection of God's glory and the exact imprint of God's very being, and he sustains all things by his powerful word. **When he had made purification for sins**, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high, <sup>4</sup>having become as much superior to angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs. (Hebrews 1:1-4)

### **Dying and Rising with Christ**

Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were **baptized into his death**? <sup>4</sup>Therefore we have been buried with him by baptism into death, so that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life. (Romans 6:3-4)

### **The Institution of the Lord's Supper**

For I received from the Lord what I also handed on to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took a loaf of bread, <sup>24</sup>and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, **'This is my body that is for you.** Do this in remembrance of me.'<sup>25</sup> In the same way he took the cup also, after supper, saying, **'This cup is the new covenant in my blood.** Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.'<sup>26</sup> For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, **you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.** (1 Corinthians 11:23-26)

### **A reflection on the Lord's Supper.**

*An unknown devotional writer has observed:*

It was at the "Last Supper" (the very evening Jesus was betrayed) the Lord carefully conducted the first Communion service. In Paul's account of the event (in 1 Corinthians 11) he describes how when we celebrate Communion, we need to take a fourfold look.

1. **We look back** - "You proclaim the Lord's death" (1 Corinthians 11:26) ... We look back to the cross. We are reminded of our Lord's sacrifice, how He gave Himself unselfishly and completely for the atonement of our sins.

2. **We look within** - "Everyone ought to examine themselves before they eat of the bread and drink from the cup." (1 Corinthians 11:28 NIV). We look at ourselves, our lives and deep into our hearts. God wants us to acknowledge our own sins and humbly ask for forgiveness.

3. **We look around** - "Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf" (1 Corinthians 10:17). The third look is to the brothers and sisters around us. We give thanks to God for **you** and our Christian family. We need one another.

4. **We look ahead** - "Until he comes" (1 Corinthians 11:26) ... We look ahead to the future. We look forward to the time when He will come again and we will have Communion with our Lord in His kingdom (Matthew 26:29; 1 Corinthians 11:26). I'm trusting you're looking forward to His coming with joy not fear.

## **The Revelation**

*Revelation, the last book in the Bible, proclaims the significance of Jesus' death and resurrection. The Lamb of God is the Lion of Judah.*

Behold, He is coming with clouds, and every eye will see Him, **even they who pierced Him**. And all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of Him. Even so, Amen. (Revelation 1:7 NKJV; see Zechariah 12:10)

See, **the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered**, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals. (Revelation 5:5; see Genesis 49:10; Psalm 110:1)

They sing a new song:

'You are worthy to take the scroll  
and to open its seals,

**for you were slaughtered and by your blood you ransomed for God**

saints from<sup>1</sup> every tribe and language and people and nation;

<sup>10</sup>you have made them to be a kingdom and priests serving our God,  
and they will reign on earth.'

Then I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels surrounding the throne and the living creatures and the elders; they numbered myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands, <sup>12</sup>singing with full voice,

**'Worthy is the Lamb that was slaughtered**

to receive power and wealth and wisdom and might  
and honour and glory and blessing!'

<sup>13</sup>Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the sea, and all that is in them, singing,

**'To the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb**

be blessing and honour and glory and might  
for ever and ever!'

(Revelation 5:9-14; see Exodus 19:6; Psalm 2:7-8; Isaiah 53:5-6; 61:6)

Then the kings of the earth and the magnates and the generals and the rich and the powerful, and everyone, slave and free, hid in the caves and among the rocks of the mountains, <sup>16</sup>calling to the mountains and rocks, 'Fall on us and hide us from the face of the one seated on the throne and from **the wrath of the Lamb**; <sup>17</sup>for the great day of their wrath has come, and who is able to stand?' (Revelation 6:15-17)

### **The Multitude from Every Nation**

After this I looked, and there was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, from all tribes and peoples and languages, standing before the throne and **before the Lamb**, robed in white, with palm branches in their hands. <sup>10</sup>They cried out in a loud voice, saying,

## *The Lion of Judah*

'Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and **to the Lamb!**' <sup>11</sup> And all the angels stood around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne and worshipped God, <sup>12</sup> singing,

'Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom  
and thanksgiving and honour  
and power and might  
be to our God for ever and ever! Amen.'

<sup>13</sup> Then one of the elders addressed me, saying, 'Who are these, robed in white, and where have they come from?' <sup>14</sup> I said to him, 'Sir, you are the one that knows.' Then he said to me, 'These are they who have come out of the great ordeal; they have washed their robes and made them white in **the blood of the Lamb.**

<sup>15</sup> For this reason they are before the throne of God,  
and worship him day and night within his temple,  
and the one who is seated on the throne will shelter them.

<sup>16</sup> They will hunger no more, and thirst no more;  
the sun will not strike them,  
nor any scorching heat;

<sup>17</sup> for **the Lamb at the centre of the throne** will be their shepherd,  
and he will guide them to springs of the water of life,  
and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes.' (Revelation 7:9-17)

Then I heard a loud voice in heaven, proclaiming,  
'Now have come the salvation and the power  
and the kingdom of our God  
and the authority of his Messiah,  
for the accuser of our comrades has been thrown down,  
who accuses them day and night before our God.

<sup>11</sup> But they have conquered him by **the blood of the Lamb**  
and by the word of their testimony,  
for they did not cling to life even in the face of death.  
(Revelation 12:10-11)

### **The Lamb and the 144,000**

Then I looked, and there was **the Lamb**, standing on Mount Zion! And with him were one hundred and forty-four thousand who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads. <sup>2</sup> And I heard a voice from heaven like the sound of many waters and like the sound of loud thunder; the voice I heard was like the sound of harpists playing on their harps, <sup>3</sup> and they sing a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and before the elders. No one could learn that song except the one hundred forty-four thousand who have been redeemed from the earth. <sup>4</sup> It is these who have not defiled themselves with women, for they are virgins; **these follow the Lamb** wherever he goes. They have been redeemed from humankind as first fruits for God and **the Lamb**, <sup>5</sup> and in their mouth no lie was found; they are blameless. (Revelation 14:1-5)

And they sing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and **the song of the Lamb**:

'Great and amazing are your deeds,

Lord God the Almighty!

Just and true are your ways,

King of the nations!

<sup>4</sup> Lord, who will not fear

and glorify your name?

For you alone are holy.

All nations will come

and worship before you,

for your judgements have been revealed.'

(Revelation 15:3-4; see Exodus 15:1-18)

These are united in yielding their power and authority to the beast; <sup>14</sup> they will make war on **the Lamb**, and **the Lamb will conquer them**, for he is Lord of lords and King of kings, and those with him are called and chosen and faithful.' (Revelation 17:13-14)

And the angel said to me, 'Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the **marriage supper of the Lamb**.' And he said to me, 'These are true words of God.' (Revelation 19:9)

### **Vision of the New Jerusalem**

I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God the Almighty and **the Lamb**.

<sup>23</sup> And the city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God is its light, and **its lamp is the Lamb**. <sup>24</sup> The nations will walk by its light, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into it. <sup>25</sup> Its gates will never be shut by day—and there will be no night there. <sup>26</sup> People will bring into it the glory and the honour of the nations. <sup>27</sup> But nothing unclean will enter it, nor anyone who practises abomination or falsehood, but only those who are written in **the Lamb's book of life**. (Revelation 21:22-27)

### **The River of Life**

Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, bright as crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of **the Lamb** <sup>2</sup> through the middle of the street of the city. On either side of the river is the tree of life with its twelve kinds of fruit, producing its fruit each month; and the leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations. <sup>3</sup> Nothing accursed will be found there any more. But the throne of God and of **the Lamb** will be in it, and his servants will worship him; <sup>4</sup> they will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. <sup>5</sup> And there will be no more night; they need no light of lamp or sun, for the Lord God will be their light, and they will reign for ever and ever. (Revelation 22:1-5)

## ***Other Sources***

*Reports in Wikipedia give details about Jesus' execution mentioned in three non-Christian sources from antiquity, by Josephus, Tacitus, and Mara bar Serapion.*

### **Josephus, Jewish historian**

The *Testimonium Flavianum* (meaning the testimony of Flavius Josephus) is the name given to the passage found in his work, *Antiquities of the Jews*, written around 93–94 AD, in Book 18, Chapter 3, 3 (possibly edited):

“About this time there lived Jesus, a wise man, if indeed one ought to call him a man. For he was one who performed surprising deeds and was a teacher of such people as accept the truth gladly. He won over many Jews and many of the Greeks. He was the Christ. And when, upon the accusation of the principal men among us, Pilate had condemned him to a cross, those who had first come to love him did not cease. He appeared to them spending a third day restored to life, for the prophets of God had foretold these things and a thousand other marvels about him. And the tribe of the Christians, so called after him, has still to this day not disappeared.”

### **Tacitus, Roman historian and senator**

Tacitus referred to Christ, his execution by Pontius Pilate and the existence of early Christians in Rome in his final work, *Annals* (written *ca.* AD 116), Book 15, Chapter 44. The context of the passage is the six-day Great Fire of Rome that burned much of the city in AD 64 during the reign of Roman Emperor Nero. Tacitus never accused Nero of playing the lyre while Rome burned - that statement came from Cassius Dio, who died in the 3rd century. But Tacitus did suggest that Nero used the Christians as scapegoats (translation from Latin by A J Church and W J Brodribb, 1876):

"Consequently, to get rid of the report, Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called Christians by the populace. Christus, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the extreme penalty during the reign of Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, Pontius Pilatus, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out not only in Judæa, the first source of the evil, but even in Rome, where all things hideous and shameful from every part of the world find their centre and become popular. Accordingly, an arrest was first made of all who pleaded guilty; then, upon their information, an immense multitude was convicted, not so much of the crime of firing the city, as of hatred against mankind."



**Mara Bar-Serapion, Syriac writer**

Mara Bar-Serapion's letter to his son is preserved in a 6th or 7th century manuscript and was composed sometime between 73 AD and the 3rd century. He examines the executions of Socrates, Pythagoras, and the Jews' wise king. William Cureton published an English translation in 1855.

“What else can we say, when the wise are forcibly dragged off by tyrants, their wisdom is captured by insults, and their minds are oppressed and without defence? What advantage did the Athenians gain from murdering Socrates? Famine and plague came upon them as a punishment for their crime. What advantage did the men of Samos gain from burning Pythagoras? In a moment their land was covered with sand. What advantage did the Jews gain from executing their wise king? It was just after that their kingdom was abolished. God justly avenged these three wise men: the Athenians died of hunger; the Samians were overwhelmed by the sea and the Jews, desolate and driven from their own kingdom, live in complete dispersion. But Socrates is not dead, because of Plato; neither is Pythagoras, because of the statue of Juno; nor is the wise king, because of the ‘new law’ he laid down.”

*A contemporary Jewish Christian leader made this observation.*

**Michael Evans, Jewish Christian**

I was told by a distinguished rabbi about the ceremony when the Children of Israel presented lambs to the priest. The lamb would be impaled on a horizontal and vertical pole. Its back would be flayed to ensure it was a spotless lamb. None of its bones would be broken, and the blood would be drained from the lamb.

Does that sound familiar? The lamb was roasted on two poles forming a cross. Jesus Christ, the Lamb of God, was placed on a cross. His hands and feet were pierced, and none of His bones were broken. Jesus was crucified on the very day the Passover lambs were being offered up.

By Dr Michael Evans (Jerusalem Prayer Team)

***The message of this whole book can be summarized in the words of the most famous verse in the Bible:***

**For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.  
(John 3:16 NKJV)**

## ***The Tree***

A great prison warden, Kenyon Scudder, often told this story of a modern-day miracle. A friend of his happened to be sitting in a railway coach next to a young man who was obviously depressed. Finally the man revealed that he was a convict returning from a distant prison. His imprisonment had brought shame on his family and they had neither visited him nor written often. He hoped, however, that this was only because they were too poor to travel, too uneducated to write. He hoped, despite the evidence, that they had forgiven him.

To make it easy for them, however, he had written them to put up a signal for him when the train passed their little farm on the outskirts of town. If his family had forgiven him they were to put up a white ribbon in the big apple tree near the line. If they didn't want him back they were to do nothing, and he would stay on the train, go far away, probably become a hobo.

As the train neared his home town his suspense became so great he couldn't bear to look out the window. His companion changed places with him and said he would watch for the apple tree. In a minute, he put his hand on the young convict's arm. "There it is," he whispered, his eyes bright with sudden tears. "It's all right. *The whole tree is white with ribbons*" (*The Christian Herald*, January 1961).

It's all right. The whole tree is red with blood.

"He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; by his wounds you have been healed" (1 Peter 2:24).

We celebrate our eternal reunion, forgiven and clean.

*This story from The Christian Herald, 1961, precedes the famous 1970s song "Tie a yellow ribbon 'round the ole oak tree" about a similar story of a man returning home on a bus after three years imprisonment.*

*Chapter 5*  
*The Resurrection of Jesus*



*The Lion of Judah Triumphs over the Dragon*

## ***The Kingdom of God***

*The kingdom of God, or God's kingdom, is a unifying theme in the whole of Scripture. The Old Testament emphasized that God reigned and increasingly looked toward an age when God's kingdom would be seen in all its glory.*

*Jesus the Messiah, God's anointed servant, not only reveals God to us as his Son, one with the Father, but he is the fulfilment of all the Messianic hopes about the kingdom of God being revealed.*

*So Jesus constantly taught about the kingdom of God, demonstrated what it was like to live in that kingdom, and inaugurated the new age of God's kingdom in his own life, death, resurrection and ascension. He rules in the Kingdom of God, the King of kings and Lord of lords, the Lion of the tribe of Judah who has conquered.*

*This chapter explores some of the implications of Jesus' death, resurrection and ascension as the conquering king, with these topics:*

*The Old Testament proclaims God's Kingdom.*

*Jesus proclaimed his Resurrection and Reign.*

*The resurrection is God's vindication of Jesus' reign.*

*The New Testament proclaims Jesus' reign.*

*Then the chapter gives a narrative summary of the events following Jesus' resurrection leading to his ascension and ultimate reign in God's kingdom.*

## ***The Old Testament proclaimed God's Kingdom***

Many passages in the Old Testament find their fulfilment in Jesus. See Chapter 2, *The Reign of Jesus*, for more examples. Here are a few passages that apply specifically to his Messianic reign in God's kingdom, with some key phrases highlighted in bold type, as throughout this book.

### **God's promise to David**

<sup>16</sup> **Your house and your kingdom** shall endure for ever before me; your throne shall be established for ever" (2 Samuel 7:16).

*God's promise to David in the parallel passage from Chronicles (post-exilic) says, "I will confirm him in my house and in my kingdom for ever, and his throne shall be established for ever" (1 Chronicles 17:14). God's house and eternal kingdom become increasingly the focus in the Scriptures.*

### **David's prayer**

<sup>27</sup> 'LORD Almighty, God of Israel, you have revealed this to your servant, saying, "I will build a house for you." So your servant has found courage to pray this prayer to you. <sup>28</sup> Sovereign LORD, you are God! Your covenant is trustworthy, and you have promised these good things to your servant. <sup>29</sup> Now be pleased to bless the house of your servant, that it may continue for ever in your sight; for you, Sovereign LORD, have spoken, and with your blessing the house of your servant will be blessed for ever.' (2 Samuel 7:16, 27-29 NIV; see Mark 9:1; John 18:36; Colossians 1:13; Hebrews 12:28-29).

The LORD said to my Lord,

**"Sit at My right hand,** [Mt 22:44; Mark 12:36; Luke 20:42;

**Till I make Your enemies Your footstool."** Acts 2:34-35; Hebrews 10:13]

<sup>2</sup> The LORD shall send the rod of Your strength out of Zion.

Rule in the midst of Your enemies!

<sup>3</sup> Your people *shall be* volunteers

In the day of Your power;

In the beauties of holiness, from the womb of the morning,

You have the dew of Your youth.

<sup>4</sup> The LORD has sworn

And will not relent,

**"You are a priest forever**

**According to the order of Melchizedek."** [Hebrews 5:6; 6:19-7:28]

<sup>5</sup> The Lord *is* at Your right hand;

He shall execute kings in the day of His wrath.

<sup>6</sup> He shall judge among the nations,

He shall fill *the places* with dead bodies,

He shall execute the heads of many countries.

<sup>7</sup> He shall drink of the brook by the wayside;  
Therefore He shall lift up the head.  
(Psalm 110:1-7 NKJV, *quoted 7 times in the New Testament*)

*Note Jesus' comment on the beginning of this Psalm:*

**The Question about David's Son**

<sup>41</sup> Now while the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them this question:  
<sup>42</sup> 'What do you think of the Messiah? Whose son is he?' They said to him, 'The son of David.'  
<sup>43</sup> He said to them, 'How is it then that David by the Spirit calls him Lord, saying,  
<sup>44</sup> "The Lord said to my Lord,  
'Sit at my right hand,  
until I put your enemies under your feet"'?  
<sup>45</sup> If David thus calls him Lord, how can he be his son?' <sup>46</sup> No one was able to give him an answer, nor from that day did anyone dare to ask him any more questions.  
(Matthew 22:41-45 NIV)

Why do the nations conspire,  
and the peoples plot in vain?  
<sup>2</sup> The kings of the earth set themselves,  
and the rulers take counsel together,  
against **the LORD and his anointed**, saying,  
<sup>3</sup> 'Let us burst their bonds asunder,  
and cast their cords from us.'  
(Psalm 2:1-3; quoted in Acts 4:25-26)

**The Righteous Reign of the Coming King**

The people who walked in darkness  
have seen a great light;  
those who lived in a land of deep darkness—  
on them light has shined. ...  
<sup>6</sup> For a child has been born for us,  
a son given to us;  
authority rests upon his shoulders;  
and he is named  
Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God,  
Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.  
<sup>7</sup> His authority shall grow continually,  
and there shall be endless peace  
for the throne of David and his kingdom.  
He will establish and uphold it  
with justice and with righteousness  
**from this time onwards and for evermore.**  
The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this.  
(Isaiah 9:2, 6-7)

**The Peaceful Kingdom**

**11 A shoot shall come out from the stock of Jesse,  
and a branch shall grow out of his roots.**

<sup>2</sup>The spirit of the LORD shall rest on him,  
the spirit of wisdom and understanding,  
the spirit of counsel and might,  
the spirit of knowledge and the fear of the LORD.

<sup>3</sup>His delight shall be in the fear of the LORD.

He shall not judge by what his eyes see,  
or decide by what his ears hear;

<sup>4</sup>but with righteousness he shall judge the poor,  
and decide with equity for the meek of the earth;  
he shall strike the earth with the rod of his mouth,  
and with the breath of his lips he shall kill the wicked.

<sup>5</sup>Righteousness shall be the belt around his waist,  
and faithfulness the belt around his loins.

<sup>6</sup>The wolf shall live with the lamb,  
the leopard shall lie down with the kid,  
the calf and the lion and the fatling together,  
and a little child shall lead them.

<sup>7</sup>The cow and the bear shall graze,  
their young shall lie down together;  
and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

<sup>8</sup>The nursing child shall play over the hole of the asp,  
and the weaned child shall put its hand on the adder's den.

<sup>9</sup>They will not hurt or destroy  
on all my holy mountain;  
for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the LORD  
as the waters cover the sea.

<sup>10</sup>On that day the root of Jesse shall stand as a signal to the peoples;  
the nations shall inquire of him, and his dwelling shall be glorious.  
(Isaiah 11:1-10; see Romans 15:12)

*This Messianic Prophecy describes a descendant of Jesse, David's father, of the tribe of Judah. Jesus was often called the son of David, a Messianic term, as in 'the genealogy of Jesus the Messiah, the son of David, the son of Abraham' (Matthew 1:1) and 'Hosanna to the Son of David' (Matthew 21:9).*

### Daniel's dream of four beasts

In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, Daniel had a dream, and visions passed through his mind as he was lying in bed. He wrote down the substance of his dream.

<sup>2</sup> Daniel said: 'In my vision at night I looked, and there before me were the four winds of heaven churning up the great sea. <sup>3</sup> Four great beasts, each different from the others, came up out of the sea. ...

<sup>9</sup> 'As I looked,

'thrones were set in place,

and the Ancient of Days took his seat.

His clothing was as white as snow;

the hair of his head was white like wool.

His throne was flaming with fire,

and its wheels were all ablaze.

<sup>10</sup> A river of fire was flowing,

coming out from before him.

Thousands upon thousands attended him;

ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him.

The court was seated,

and the books were opened. ...

<sup>13</sup> 'In my vision at night I looked, and there before me was one like a **son of man** coming with the clouds of heaven. He approached the Ancient of Days and was led into his presence. <sup>14</sup> **He was given authority, glory and sovereign power; all nations and peoples of every language worshipped him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion that will not pass away, and his kingdom is one that will never be destroyed.**

### The interpretation of the dream

<sup>15</sup> 'I, Daniel, was troubled in spirit, and the visions that passed through my mind disturbed me. <sup>16</sup> I approached one of those standing there and asked him the meaning of all this.

'So he told me and gave me the interpretation of these things: <sup>17</sup> "The four great beasts are four kings that will rise from the earth. <sup>18</sup> But the holy people of the Most High will receive the kingdom and will possess it for ever – yes, for ever and ever." ...

<sup>26</sup> "But the court will sit, ... <sup>27</sup> Then the sovereignty, power and greatness of all the kingdoms under heaven will be handed over to the holy people of the Most High. **His kingdom will be an everlasting kingdom, and all rulers will worship and obey him.**" (Daniel 7:1-3, 9-18, 26-27; see Daniel 4:3; Matthew 24:30; 26:64; Mark 14:62; 2 Peter 1:11)

NIV Note on Daniel 7:13. The Aramaic phrase *bar enash* means *human being*. The phrase *son of man* is retained here because of its use in the New Testament as a title of Jesus, probably based largely on this verse.



## ***Jesus proclaimed his Resurrection and Reign***

*Jesus' name, Yeshua/Joshua, means God saves or God is salvation. God's salvation through Jesus brings his kingdom in all its glory. Jesus said, 'For the Son of Man came not to be served but to serve, and to give his life a ransom for many' (Mark 10:45) and declared, 'I am the resurrection and the life. Those who believe in me, even though they die, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die' (John 11:25-26).*

*Jesus' Galilean ministry culminated in taking the disciples away from the crowds into the hills north of Lake Galilee. At Caesarea Philippi, near Mt Hermon, Peter declared that Jesus was indeed the Messiah, the Son of God, and Jesus foretold his death and resurrection (Matthew 16:13-28; Mark 8:27-38; Luke 9:18-27).*

*Peter, James and John witnessed the Transfiguration where Moses and Elijah talked with Jesus about his approaching departure.*

<sup>28</sup>Now about eight days after these sayings Jesus took with him Peter and John and James, and went up on the mountain to pray. <sup>29</sup>And while he was praying, the appearance of his face changed, and his clothes became dazzling white. <sup>30</sup>Suddenly they saw two men, Moses and Elijah, talking to him. <sup>31</sup>They appeared in glory and were speaking of his departure [Greek, *exodus*], which he was about to accomplish at Jerusalem. (Luke 9:28-31)

*God spoke from the cloud: This is my Son, my Beloved/Chosen, whom I love; listen to him (see Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36; 2 Peter 1:16-18).*

*The Transfiguration, a pivotal event told around the middle of the Synoptic Gospels, marks the beginning of Jesus' final journey – to Jerusalem, to his death, resurrection and ascension. The fulfilment of the Exodus with Moses is found in Jesus' Exodus in his death, resurrection and ascension.*

*Jesus told his disciples three times about his approaching death and resurrection, but they did not comprehend. They were afraid to ask him about it:*

*First, at Caesarea Philippi (Matthew 16:21-28; Mark 8:31-38; Luke 9:21-27).*

*Second, in Galilee (Matthew 17:22-23; Mark 9:30-32; Luke 9:43-45).*

*Third, near Jerusalem (Matthew 20:17-19; Mark 10:32-34; Luke 18:31-34).*

*Here is Jesus' disciple Matthew's report of those three declarations by Jesus:*

### **Jesus Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

<sup>21</sup> From that time on, Jesus began to show his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and undergo great suffering at the hands of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and **on the third day be raised.**

(Matthew 16:21)

### **Jesus Again Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

As they were gathering in Galilee, Jesus said to them, 'The Son of Man is going to be betrayed into human hands, <sup>23</sup> and they will kill him, and **on the third day he will be raised.**' And they were greatly distressed. (Matthew 17:22-23)

### **A Third Time Jesus Foretells His Death and Resurrection**

While Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, he took the twelve disciples aside by themselves, and said to them on the way, <sup>18</sup> 'See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and scribes, and they will condemn him to death; <sup>19</sup> then they will hand him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and flogged and crucified; and **on the third day he will be raised.**'

(Matthew 20:17-19)

*Jesus spoke at other times about his life beyond his death and resurrection.*

### **The Coming of the Son of Man**

But in those days, after that suffering,  
the sun will be darkened,

and the moon will not give its light,

<sup>25</sup> and the stars will be falling from heaven,

and the powers in the heavens will be shaken.

<sup>26</sup> Then they will see "**the Son of Man coming in clouds**" with great power and glory.

<sup>27</sup> Then he will send out the angels, and gather his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of heaven.

(Mark 13:24-27; the phrase in quotation marks refers to Daniel 7:13)

### **Jesus the Way to the Father**

'Do not let your hearts be troubled. Believe in God, believe also in me. <sup>2</sup> In my Father's house there are many dwelling-places. If it were not so, would I have told you that **I go to prepare a place for you?** <sup>3</sup> And if I go and prepare a place for you, **I will come again and will take you to myself, so that where I am, there you may be also.** <sup>4</sup> And you know the way to the place where I am going.' <sup>5</sup> Thomas said to him, 'Lord, we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?' <sup>6</sup> Jesus said to him, 'I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. <sup>7</sup> If you know me, you will know my Father also. From now on you do know him and have seen him.'

(John 14:1-7)

Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me; but if you do not, then believe me because of the works themselves. <sup>12</sup>Very truly, I tell you, the one who believes in me will also do the works that I do and, in fact, will do greater works than these, because **I am going to the Father.** <sup>13</sup>I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. <sup>14</sup>If in my name you ask me for anything, I will do it. ...

You heard me say to you, "I am going away, and I am coming to you." If you loved me, you would rejoice that I am going to the Father, because the Father is greater than I. <sup>29</sup>And now I have told you this before it occurs, so that when it does occur, you may believe. <sup>30</sup>I will no longer talk much with you, for the ruler of this world is coming. He has no power over me; <sup>31</sup>but I do as the Father has commanded me, so that the world may know that I love the Father. Rise, let us be on our way. (John 14:11-14, 28-31)

*Jesus said this at the Last Supper to prepare the disciples for the shock of his crucifixion the next morning. They left the upper room and walked to Gethsemane of the slopes of the Mount of Olives just east of the city. He continued to prepare them for his arrest that night after he had prayed in agony.*

#### **Peter's Denial Foretold**

When they had sung the hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives. <sup>27</sup>And Jesus said to them, 'You will all become deserters; for it is written, "I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered."

<sup>28</sup>**But after I am raised up, I will go before you to Galilee.**' <sup>29</sup>Peter said to him, 'Even though all become deserters, I will not.' <sup>30</sup>Jesus said to him, 'Truly I tell you, this day, this very night, before the cock crows twice, you will deny me three times.' <sup>31</sup>But he said vehemently, 'Even though I must die with you, I will not deny you.' And all of them said the same. (Mark 14:26-31)

*Jesus continued to prepare his disciples for his death and resurrection.*

'When the Advocate comes, whom **I will send to you from the Father**, the Spirit of truth who comes from the Father, he will testify on my behalf. <sup>27</sup>You also are to testify because you have been with me from the beginning. (John 15:26-27)

'I did not say these things to you from the beginning, because I was with you. <sup>5</sup>But now **I am going to him who sent me**; yet none of you asks me, "Where are you going?" <sup>6</sup>But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your hearts. ... <sup>16</sup>**A little while, and you will no longer see me, and again a little while, and you will see me.** ... <sup>22</sup>So you have pain now; but I will see you again, and your hearts will rejoice, and no one will take your joy from you. ... <sup>33</sup>I have said this to you, so that in me you may have peace. In the world you face persecution. But take courage; I have conquered the world!' (John 16:4-6, 16, 22, 33)

## *The Lion of Judah*

After Jesus had spoken these words, he looked up to heaven and said, ‘Father, the hour has come; glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you, <sup>2</sup> since you have given him authority over all people, to give eternal life to all whom you have given him. <sup>3</sup> And this is eternal life, that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent. <sup>4</sup> I glorified you on earth by finishing the work that you gave me to do. <sup>5</sup> So now, Father, **glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had in your presence before the world existed.** (John 17:1-5)

### **Jesus before the Council**

Then the high priest stood up before them and asked Jesus, ‘Have you no answer? What is it that they testify against you?’ <sup>61</sup> But he was silent and did not answer. Again the high priest asked him, ‘Are you the Messiah, the Son of the Blessed One?’ <sup>62</sup> Jesus said, ‘I am; and

**“you will see the Son of Man**

**seated at the right hand of the Power”,** [Psalm 110:1]

**and “coming with the clouds of heaven.”**” [Daniel 7:13]

<sup>63</sup> Then the high priest tore his clothes and said, ‘Why do we still need witnesses? <sup>64</sup> You have heard his blasphemy! What is your decision?’ All of them condemned him as deserving death. <sup>65</sup> Some began to spit on him, to blindfold him, and to strike him, saying to him, ‘Prophecy!’ The guards also took him over and beat him. (Mark 14:60-65)

### **Jesus before Pilate**

Jesus said, **‘My kingdom is not of this world.** If it were, my servants would fight to prevent my arrest by the Jewish leaders. But now **my kingdom is from another place.**’ (John 18:36)

### **The inscription on the cross:**

**Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.**

(John 19:19; see Matthew 27:37; Mark 15:26; Luke 23:38)

### **Jesus Appears to His Disciples**

‘These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about me in the law of Moses, the prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled.’ Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup> and he said to them, ‘Thus it is written, that the Messiah is to suffer and to **rise from the dead on the third day,** <sup>47</sup> and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem.

(Luke 24:44-47)

## **The Resurrection is God's Vindication of Jesus' Reign**

*The resurrection is God's vindication of Jesus and his reign in the kingdom of God. God raised him from death and gave him the name that is above every other name, as Paul wrote in his song in Philippians:*

Let the same mind be in you that was in Christ Jesus,

<sup>6</sup> who, though he was in the form of God,  
did not regard equality with God  
as something to be exploited,

<sup>7</sup> but emptied himself,  
taking the form of a slave,  
being born in human likeness.

And being found in human form,

<sup>8</sup> he humbled himself  
and became obedient to the point of death—  
even death on a cross.

<sup>9</sup> Therefore **God also highly exalted him**  
and gave him the name  
that is above every name,

<sup>10</sup> so that at the name of Jesus  
every knee should bend,  
in heaven and on earth and under the earth,

<sup>11</sup> and every tongue should confess  
that **Jesus Christ is Lord,**  
**to the glory of God the Father.**

(Philippians 2:5-11)

*Peter proclaimed this vindication of Jesus by God on the Day of Pentecost:*

'Fellow Israelites, I may say to you confidently of our ancestor David that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. <sup>30</sup> Since he was a prophet, he knew that God had sworn with an oath to him that he would put one of his descendants on his throne. <sup>31</sup> Foreseeing this, **David spoke of the resurrection of the Messiah,** saying,

"He was not abandoned to Hades,  
nor did his flesh experience corruption."

<sup>32</sup> This Jesus **God raised up**, and of that all of us are witnesses. <sup>33</sup> Being therefore exalted at the right hand of God, and having **received from the Father the promise of**

**the Holy Spirit**, he has poured out this that you both see and hear. <sup>34</sup> For David did not ascend into the heavens, but he himself says,

“The Lord said to my Lord,  
‘Sit at my right hand,  
<sup>35</sup> until I make your enemies your footstool.”

<sup>36</sup> Therefore let the entire house of Israel know with certainty that **God has made him both Lord and Messiah**, this Jesus whom you crucified.’  
(Acts 2:29-36)

*Peter continued to declare this vindication in his preaching:*

The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, the God of our ancestors has **glorified his servant Jesus**, whom you handed over and rejected in the presence of Pilate, though he had decided to release him. <sup>14</sup> But you rejected the Holy and Righteous One and asked to have a murderer given to you, <sup>15</sup> and you killed the Author of life, whom **God raised from the dead**. (Acts 3:13-15)

Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, ‘Rulers of the people and elders, <sup>9</sup> if we are questioned today because of a good deed done to someone who was sick and are asked how this man has been healed, <sup>10</sup> let it be known to all of you, and to all the people of Israel, that this man is standing before you in good health by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, whom **God raised from the dead**. <sup>11</sup> This Jesus is

“the stone that was rejected by you, the builders;  
it has become the cornerstone.”

<sup>12</sup> There is **salvation in no one else**, for **there is no other name under heaven** given among mortals by which we must be saved.’ (Acts 4:8-12)

*Paul preaching in Athens emphasized God’s vindication of Jesus:*

‘Therefore since we are God’s offspring, we should not think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone – an image made by human design and skill. <sup>30</sup> In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. <sup>31</sup> For he has set a day when **he will judge the world with justice by the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to everyone by raising him from the dead.**’ (Acts 17:30-31 NIV)

*Paul gives similar declarations in his epistles:*

Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God – <sup>2</sup> the gospel he promised beforehand through his prophets in the Holy Scriptures

<sup>3</sup> regarding his Son, who as to his earthly life was a descendant of David, <sup>4</sup> and who through the Spirit of holiness was **appointed the Son of God in power by his resurrection from the dead**: Jesus Christ our Lord. (Romans 1:1-4 NIV)

[Concerning Abraham] Yet he did not waver through unbelief regarding the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, <sup>21</sup> being fully persuaded that God had power to do what he had promised. <sup>22</sup> This is why 'it was credited to him as righteousness.' <sup>23</sup> The words 'it was credited to him' were written not for him alone, <sup>24</sup> but also for us, to whom God will credit righteousness – for us who believe in him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead. <sup>25</sup> **He was delivered over to death for our sins and was raised to life for our justification.** (Romans 4:20-25 NIV)

*God, in raising Jesus from death, gave him power and authority to reign supreme as king in the kingdom of God. Jesus constantly taught about God's kingdom and demonstrated it in what he did, not only through healing and miracles but especially in demonstrating God's love. The greatest demonstration of that love was in his own death, vindicated by God in raising him from death.*

### **God Is Love**

Beloved, let us love one another, because love is from God; everyone who loves is born of God and knows God. <sup>8</sup> Whoever does not love does not know God, for **God is love.**

<sup>9</sup> **God's love was revealed among us in this way:** God sent his only Son into the world so that we might live through him. <sup>10</sup> In this is love, not that we loved God but that he loved us and sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins. (1 John 4:7-10)

For **God so loved the world that he gave his only Son**, so that everyone who believes in him may not perish but may have eternal life. (John 3:16)

*God's mighty power which raised Jesus to life is also in believers.*

In the same way, count yourselves **dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.**

<sup>12</sup> Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body so that you obey its evil desires.

<sup>13</sup> Do not offer any part of yourself to sin as an instrument of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer every part of yourself to him as an instrument of righteousness. <sup>14</sup> For **sin shall no longer be your master**, because you are not under the law, but under grace. (Romans 6:11-14 NIV)

I pray that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in his holy people, <sup>19</sup> and his **incomparably great power for us who believe.** That power is the same as **the mighty strength** <sup>20</sup> **he exerted when he raised Christ from the dead** and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, <sup>21</sup> far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every name that is invoked, not only in the present

## *The Lion of Judah*

age but also in the one to come. <sup>22</sup>And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, <sup>23</sup> which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way. (Ephesians 1:18-23 NIV)

### ***Jesus reigns***

*Jesus the Christ, the Messiah, reigns in glory, raised from death by God the Father. God raised him and gave him all authority in heaven and on earth. God's verdict on Jesus' life and death is demonstrated in his resurrection and ascension and the absolute power and authority God gives to Jesus our Lord. Jesus reigns as king in God's kingdom. He said so:*

Jesus answered, '**My kingdom is not from this world.** If my kingdom were from this world, my followers would be fighting to keep me from being handed over to the Jews. But as it is, my kingdom is not from here.' (John 18:36)

Jesus came and said to them, '**All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.** <sup>19</sup>Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup>and teaching them to obey everything that I have commanded you. And remember, **I am with you always, to the end of the age.**' (Matthew 28:18-20)

*Paul comments on the purity of "the kingdom of Christ and of God" (Ephesians 5:5) and refers to both God and Christ Jesus in advising Timothy:*

In the presence of God and of Christ Jesus, who is to judge the living and the dead, and in view of his appearing and **his kingdom**, I solemnly urge you: <sup>2</sup>proclaim the message; be persistent whether the time is favourable or unfavourable; convince, rebuke, and encourage, with the utmost patience in teaching. (2 Timothy 4:1-2)

*Similarly, Peter refers to Jesus Christ's reign with and for God:*

May grace and peace be yours in abundance in the knowledge of **God and of Jesus our Lord.** ...

<sup>10</sup>Therefore, brothers and sisters, be all the more eager to confirm your call and election, for if you do this, you will never stumble. <sup>11</sup>For in this way, entry into **the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ** will be richly provided for you. (2 Peter 1, 10-11)

*This oneness in their joint reign is also announced in Revelation:*

'The kingdom of the world has become **the kingdom of our Lord and of his Messiah,**  
and he will reign for ever and ever.'



## ***The New Testament Proclaims Jesus' Reign***

*The Gospels tell how Jesus fulfilled prophecies in the Old Testament Scriptures. See **The Lion of Judah (2) The Reign of Jesus** for many more examples. Prophecies about his eternal reign are often linked with his death*

### **The Birth of Jesus Foretold**

In the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent by God to a town in Galilee called Nazareth, <sup>27</sup> to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David. The virgin's name was Mary. <sup>28</sup> And he came to her and said, 'Greetings, favoured one! The Lord is with you.' <sup>29</sup> But she was much perplexed by his words and pondered what sort of greeting this might be. <sup>30</sup> The angel said to her, 'Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favour with God. <sup>31</sup> And now, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you will name him Jesus. <sup>32</sup> **He will be great, and will be called the Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give to him the throne of his ancestor David. <sup>33</sup> He will reign over the house of Jacob for ever, and of his kingdom there will be no end.'** (Luke 1:26-32)

### **Mary's Song of Praise**

And Mary said,

'My soul magnifies the Lord,

<sup>47</sup> and my spirit rejoices in God my Saviour,

<sup>48</sup> for he has looked with favour on the lowliness of his servant.

Surely, from now on all generations will call me blessed;

<sup>49</sup> for the Mighty One has done great things for me,  
and holy is his name.

<sup>50</sup> His mercy is for those who fear him  
from generation to generation.

<sup>51</sup> He has shown strength with his arm;  
he has scattered the proud in the thoughts of their hearts.

<sup>52</sup> He has brought down the powerful from their thrones,  
and lifted up the lowly;

<sup>53</sup> he has filled the hungry with good things,  
and sent the rich away empty.

<sup>54</sup> **He has helped his servant Israel,  
in remembrance of his mercy,**

<sup>55</sup> **according to the promise he made to our ancestors,  
to Abraham and to his descendants for ever.'**

(Luke 1:46-55)

### **Jesus presented in the temple**

Simeon took him in his arms and praised God, saying,

'Master, now you are dismissing your servant in peace,  
according to your word;  
<sup>30</sup> for my eyes have seen your salvation, [Isaiah 52:10]  
<sup>31</sup> which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples,  
<sup>32</sup> a light for revelation to the Gentiles [Isaiah 42:6]  
and for glory to your people Israel.' (Luke 2:29-32)

### **Jesus Begins His Ministry in Galilee**

Now when Jesus heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee. <sup>13</sup> He left Nazareth and made his home in Capernaum by the lake, in the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali, <sup>14</sup> so that what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah might be fulfilled: <sup>15</sup> 'Land of Zebulun, land of Naphtali,  
on the road by the sea, across the Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles—

<sup>16</sup> **the people who sat in darkness  
have seen a great light,  
and for those who sat in the region and shadow of death  
light has dawned.'**

(Matthew 4:13-16; see Isaiah 9:1-2)

### **God's Chosen Servant**

Many crowds followed him, and he cured all of them, <sup>16</sup> and he ordered them not to make him known. <sup>17</sup> This was to fulfil what had been spoken through the prophet Isaiah:

**'Here is my servant, whom I have chosen,**  
my beloved, with whom my soul is well pleased.  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.  
He will not wrangle or cry aloud,  
nor will anyone hear his voice in the streets.  
He will not break a bruised reed  
or quench a smouldering wick  
until he brings justice to victory.  
**And in his name the Gentiles will hope.'**

(Matthew 12:15-21; see Isaiah 42:1-4)

### **Jesus' Triumphal Entry into Jerusalem**

Then those who went ahead and those who followed were shouting,  
**'Hosanna!**

**Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!**

**Blessed is the coming kingdom of our ancestor David!**

**Hosanna in the highest heaven!**

(Mark 11:10-11; see Matthew 21:9; Luke 19:38; Psalm 118:25-26)

And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, <sup>15</sup> that whoever believes in him may **have eternal life**. <sup>16</sup> For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him may not perish but may **have eternal life**.

(John 3:14-16; see Numbers 21:9)

They did not understand the scripture, that **he must rise from the dead**.

(John 20:9; see Psalm 16:10)

### **The Commissioning of the Disciples**

<sup>16</sup> Now the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain to which Jesus had directed them. <sup>17</sup> When they saw him, they worshipped him; but some doubted. <sup>18</sup> And Jesus came and said to them, **'All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.** <sup>19</sup> Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup> and teaching them to obey everything that I have commanded you. And remember, **I am with you always, to the end of the age.'**

(Matthew 28:18-20)

*Peter, preaching on the Day of Pentecost and speaking to the religious leaders showed how Jesus fulfilled Scripture.*

For David says concerning him,

"I saw the Lord always before me,

for he is at my right hand so that I will not be shaken;

<sup>26</sup> therefore my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced;

moreover, my flesh will live in hope.

<sup>27</sup> **For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,  
or let your Holy One experience corruption.**

<sup>28</sup> You have made known to me the ways of life;

you will make me full of gladness with your presence."

(Acts 2:25-28; see Psalm 16:8-11)

### **Peter Speaks in Solomon's Portico**

The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, the God of our ancestors has glorified his servant Jesus, whom you handed over and rejected in the presence of Pilate, though he had decided to release him. <sup>14</sup> But you rejected **the Holy and Righteous One** and asked to have a murderer given to you, <sup>15</sup> and you killed **the Author of life, whom God raised from the dead**. To this we are witnesses. <sup>16</sup> And by faith in his name, his name itself has made this man strong, whom you see and know; and the faith that is through Jesus has given him this perfect health in the presence of all of you.

<sup>17</sup> 'And now, friends, I know that you acted in ignorance, as did also your rulers. <sup>18</sup> In this way God fulfilled what he had foretold through all the prophets, that his Messiah would suffer. <sup>19</sup> Repent therefore, and turn to God so that your sins may be wiped out, <sup>20</sup> so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that he may send the Messiah appointed for you, that is, Jesus, <sup>21</sup> who must remain in heaven until the time of universal restoration that God announced long ago through his holy prophets. <sup>22</sup> Moses said, "The Lord your God will raise up for you from your own people a prophet like me. You must listen to whatever he tells you. <sup>23</sup> And it will be that everyone who does not listen to that prophet will be utterly rooted out from the people." <sup>24</sup> And all the prophets, as many as have spoken, from Samuel and those after him, also predicted these days. <sup>25</sup> You are the descendants of the prophets and of the covenant that God gave to your ancestors, saying to Abraham, "And in your descendants all the families of the earth shall be blessed." <sup>26</sup> When **God raised up his servant**, he sent him first to you, to bless you by turning each of you from your wicked ways'

(Acts 3:18-26; see Deuteronomy 18:15, 18, 19; Genesis 22:18; 26:4; 28:14).

*Paul and others showed from Scripture that Jesus was raised from death.*

And we bring you the good news that what God promised to our ancestors <sup>33</sup> he has fulfilled for us, their children, **by raising Jesus**; as also it is written in the second psalm,

"You are my Son;  
today I have begotten you." [Palm 2:7]

<sup>34</sup> As to his **raising him from the dead, no more to return to corruption**, he has spoken in this way,

"I will give you the holy promises made to David." [Psalm 89:28; Isaiah 55:3]

<sup>35</sup> Therefore he has also said in another psalm,

**"You will not let your Holy One experience corruption."** [Psalm 16:10]

<sup>36</sup> For David, after he had served the purpose of God in his own generation, died, was laid beside his ancestors, and experienced corruption; <sup>37</sup> but **he whom God raised up experienced no corruption**. (Acts 13:32-37)

As was his custom, Paul went into the synagogue, and on three Sabbath days he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, <sup>3</sup> explaining and proving that the **Messiah had to suffer and rise from the dead.**

‘This Jesus I am proclaiming to you is the Messiah,’ he said. ...

In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent. <sup>31</sup> For he has set a day when he will judge the world with justice by **the man he has appointed. He has given proof of this to everyone by raising him from the dead.**’ (Acts 17:2-3, 30-31 NIV)

To this day I have had help from God, and so I stand here, testifying to both small and great, saying nothing but what the prophets and Moses said would take place: <sup>23</sup> that **the Messiah must suffer, and that, by being the first to rise from the dead, he would proclaim light both to our people and to the Gentiles.**’ (Acts 26:22-23)

“As surely as I live,” says the Lord,

**“Every knee will bow before me;  
every tongue will acknowledge God.”**

(Romans 14:10-11 NIV; see Philippians 2:9-11; Isaiah 45:23)

And again, Isaiah says:

“There shall be a root of Jesse;

And He who shall rise to **reign over the Gentiles,**

In Him the Gentiles shall hope.” (Romans 15:12 NKJV; see Isaiah 11:1-10)

For what I received I passed on to you as of first importance: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, <sup>4</sup> that he was buried, that **he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures** (1 Corinthians 15:3-4)

### **Imitating Christ’s Humility**

Let the same mind be in you that was in Christ Jesus,

<sup>6</sup> who, though he was in the form of God,

did not regard equality with God

as something to be exploited,

<sup>7</sup> but emptied himself,

taking the form of a slave,

being born in human likeness.

And being found in human form,

<sup>8</sup> he humbled himself

and became obedient to the point of death—

even death on a cross.

<sup>9</sup> **Therefore God also highly exalted him**

**and gave him the name**

**that is above every name,**

<sup>10</sup> **so that at the name of Jesus**

**every knee should bend,  
in heaven and on earth and under the earth,  
<sup>11</sup> and every tongue should confess  
that Jesus Christ is Lord,  
to the glory of God the Father.**

(Philippians 2:5-11)

### **The Supremacy of Christ**

He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation; <sup>16</sup>for in him all things in heaven and on earth were created, things visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or powers—all things have been created through him and for him. <sup>17</sup>He himself is before all things, and in him all things hold together. <sup>18</sup>He is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning, **the firstborn from the dead, so that he might come to have first place in everything.** <sup>19</sup>For in him all the fullness of God was pleased to dwell, <sup>20</sup>and through him God was pleased to reconcile to himself all things, whether on earth or in heaven, by making peace through the blood of his cross.

(Colossians 1:15-20)

### **Spiritual fullness in Christ**

When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your flesh, **God made you alive with Christ.** He forgave us all our sins, <sup>14</sup>having cancelled the charge of our legal indebtedness, which stood against us and condemned us; he has taken it away, nailing it to the cross. <sup>15</sup>**And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.** (Colossians 2:13-15)

### **God Has Spoken by His Son**

Long ago God spoke to our ancestors in many and various ways by the prophets, <sup>2</sup>but in these last days he has spoken to us by a Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, through whom he also created the worlds. <sup>3</sup>He is the reflection of God's glory and the exact imprint of God's very being, and he sustains all things by his powerful word. **When he had made purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high, <sup>4</sup>having become as much superior to angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs.** (Hebrews 1:1-4)

### **Dying and Rising with Christ**

Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? <sup>4</sup>Therefore we have been buried with him by baptism into death, so that, just as **Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father,** so we too might walk in newness of life. (Romans 6:3-4)

## ***The Revelation***

*Revelation, the last book in the Bible, proclaims the significance of Jesus' death and resurrection. The Lamb of God is the Lion of Judah. The Book of Revelation declares his eternal Kingdom.*

Grace to you and peace from him who is and who was and who is to come, and from the seven spirits who are before his throne, <sup>5</sup> and from **Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth.** To him who loves us and freed us from our sins by his blood, <sup>6</sup> and made us to be a kingdom, priests serving his God and Father, to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.  
(Revelation 1:4-6; see Isaiah 55:4; Psalm 89:27)

Behold, **He is coming with clouds, and every eye will see Him,** even they who pierced Him. And all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of Him. Even so, Amen.  
(Revelation 1:7 NKJV; see Zechariah 12:10)

See, the **Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered,** so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals.  
(Revelation 5:5; see Genesis 49:10; Psalm 110:1)

They sing a new song:

'You are worthy to take the scroll  
and to open its seals,

for you were slaughtered and by your blood you ransomed for God  
saints from<sup>1</sup> every tribe and language and people and nation;

<sup>10</sup> you have made them to be a kingdom and priests serving our God,  
and they will reign on earth.'

Then I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels surrounding the throne and the living creatures and the elders; they numbered myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands, <sup>12</sup> singing with full voice,

**'Worthy is the Lamb that was slaughtered  
to receive power and wealth and wisdom and might  
and honour and glory and blessing!'**

<sup>13</sup> Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the sea, and all that is in them, singing,

**'To the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb  
be blessing and honour and glory and might  
for ever and ever!'**

(Revelation 5:9-14; see Exodus 19:6; Psalm 2:7-8; Isaiah 53:5-6; 61:6)

**The Multitude from Every Nation**

After this I looked, and there was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, from all tribes and peoples and languages, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, robed in white, with palm branches in their hands. <sup>10</sup> They cried out in a loud voice, saying,

**'Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!'**

<sup>11</sup> And all the angels stood around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne and worshipped God, <sup>12</sup> singing, 'Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom and thanksgiving and honour and power and might be to our God for ever and ever! Amen.'

<sup>13</sup> Then one of the elders addressed me, saying, 'Who are these, robed in white, and where have they come from?' <sup>14</sup> I said to him, 'Sir, you are the one that knows.' Then he said to me, 'These are they who have come out of the great ordeal; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.'

<sup>15</sup> For this reason they are before the throne of God, and worship him day and night within his temple, and the one who is seated on the throne will shelter them.

<sup>16</sup> They will hunger no more, and thirst no more; the sun will not strike them, nor any scorching heat;

<sup>17</sup> **for the Lamb at the centre of the throne will be their shepherd, and he will guide them to springs of the water of life, and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes.'** (Revelation 7:9-17)

**'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Messiah, and he will reign for ever and ever.'**  
(Revelation 11:15; see Exodus 15:18)

Then I heard a loud voice in heaven, proclaiming,

'Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God **and the authority of his Messiah,**

for the accuser of our comrades has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God.

<sup>11</sup> But they have conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, for they did not cling to life even in the face of death.  
(Revelation 12:10-11)



And they sing the song of Moses, the servant of God,

and **the song of the Lamb**:

'Great and amazing are your deeds,

Lord God the Almighty!

Just and true are your ways,

King of the nations!

<sup>4</sup> Lord, who will not fear

and glorify your name?

For you alone are holy.

All nations will come

and worship before you,

for your judgements have been revealed.'

(Revelation 15:3-4; see Exodus 15:1-18)

These are united in yielding their power and authority to the beast; <sup>14</sup> they will make war on the Lamb, and **the Lamb will conquer them, for he is Lord of lords and King of kings**, and those with him are called and chosen and faithful.' (Revelation 17:13-14)

On his robe and on his thigh he has a name inscribed,

**'King of kings and Lord of lords'**.

(Revelation 19:16; see Daniel 2:47)

### **Vision of the New Jerusalem**

I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God the Almighty and **the Lamb**.

<sup>23</sup> And the city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God is its light, and **its lamp is the Lamb**. <sup>24</sup> The nations will walk by its light, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into it. <sup>25</sup> Its gates will never be shut by day—and there will be no night there. <sup>26</sup> People will bring into it the glory and the honour of the nations. <sup>27</sup> But

nothing unclean will enter it, nor anyone who practises abomination or falsehood, but only those who are written in **the Lamb's book of life**. (Revelation 21:22-27)

### **The River of Life**

Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, bright as crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of **the Lamb** <sup>2</sup> through the middle of the street of the city. On either side of the river is the tree of life with its twelve kinds of fruit, producing its fruit each month; and the leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations. <sup>3</sup> Nothing accursed will be found there any more. But the throne of God and of **the Lamb** will be in it, and his servants will worship him; <sup>4</sup> they will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. <sup>5</sup> And there will be no more night; they need no light of lamp or sun, for the Lord God will be their light, and they will reign for ever and ever. (Revelation 22:1-5)

## ***The Resurrection and Ascension***

*This summary is also an estimate of the order of the resurrection appearances of Jesus, followed by a chart which also estimates the order of events in those 40 days.*

### **Resurrection Appearances**

#### **Resurrection Sunday**

Mary Magdalene - Mark 16:9, John 20:11-18

The Women - Matthew 28:9-10

Cleopas and friend, Emmaus Road - Mark 16:12-13, Luke 24:13-34

Simon Peter - Luke 24:34, 1 Corinthians 15:5

The Disciples - Mark 16:14, Luke 24:36-49, John 20:19-23,  
1 Corinthians 15:5



#### **40 Days - Acts 1:3**

Disciples with Thomas, one week later - John 20:24-29

500 at once - 1 Corinthians 15:6

James - 1 Corinthians 15:7

Galilee Shore - John 21:1-25

Galilee Mountain - Matthew 28:16-20

Ascension, Mount of Olives - Acts 1:6-9

## Resurrection

<b>The Resurrection and the Great Forty Days</b>		
<b>Description</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Scripture</b>
Women carry spices to the tomb	The Garden	Mt 28:1 Mk 16:1,2 Lk 24:1
The angel had rolled away the stone	The Garden	Mt 28:2
Women announce the resurrection	Jerusalem	Mt 28:8 Lk 24:9,10 Jn 20:1,2
Peter and John run to the tomb	The Garden	Lk 24:12 Jn 20:3
The women return to the tomb	The Garden	Lk 24:1
The guards report these things to the chief priests	Jerusalem	Mt 28:11-15
<b>APPEARANCES OF CHRIST AFTER HIS RESURRECTION</b>		
1) To Mary Magdalene: 'All hail! Fear not. Touch me not'	The Garden	Mt 16:9,10 Jn 20:14
2) To the women returning home: 'Go tell my brothers that they go into Galilee - there shall they see me'	The Garden	Mt 28:9, 10
3) To two disciples going to Emmaus (exposition of prophecies on the passion)	Emmaus Road	Mk 16:12 Lk 24:13
4) To Peter	Jerusalem	1Cor 15:5 Lk 24:34
5) To ten Apostles:	Jerusalem	Lk 24:33 Jn 20:19

*The Lion of Judah*

'Peace be unto you As my Father hath sent me, so send I you. 'Receive ye the Holy Spirit. Whoever's sins you remit,' etc	Jerusalem	Jn 20:2-23
6) To the eleven Apostles	Jerusalem	Mk 16:14 Jn 20:26
'Peace be unto you'	.	Jn 20:26
To Thomas: 'Reach out your finger,' etc 'Blessed are they that have not seen, yet have believed'	Jerusalem	Jn 20:27, 29
7) To 500 at once	Unknown	1 Cor 15:6
8) To James	Unknown	1 Cor 15:
9) To the disciples at the sea of Tiberias, including a miracle draught of fishes	Galilee	Jn 21:1-24
To Peter; 'Feed my sheep, feed my lambs'	Galilee	Jn 21:15-17
10) To the 11 disciples on a mountain: 'All authority has been given to me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, ... Lo, I am with you always even to the end of the age.'	Galilee	Mt 28:16-20
THE ASCENSION	Mt of Olives Bethany	Mk 16:19 Lk 24:50-51 Acts 1:9-11

*Due to different emphases in each gospel, the chronological order is not always clear. The tables are one possibility. This chronology is adapted and used with permission from Believe: <http://mb-soft.com/believe/txh/gospgosp.htm>*

*The following narrative passages are selected and reproduced in an estimated order using the **New International Version (NIV)**.*

## Resurrection Sunday

- 1) Mary Magdalene - Mark 16:9, John 20:11-18
- 2) The Women - Matthew 28:9-10
- 3) Cleopas and friend, Emmaus Road – Mark 16:12-13, Luke 24:13-34
- 4) Simon Peter - Luke 24:34, 1 Corinthians 15:5
- 5) The Disciples - Mark 16:14, Luke 24:36-49, John 20:19-23,  
1 Corinthians 15:5

### 1) Mary Magdalene

When the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices so that they might go to anoint Jesus' body. <sup>2</sup> Very early on the first day of the week, just after sunrise, they were on their way to the tomb <sup>3</sup> and they asked each other, 'Who will roll the stone away from the entrance of the tomb?'

<sup>4</sup> But when they looked up, they saw that the stone, which was very large, had been rolled away. <sup>5</sup> As they entered the tomb, they saw a young man dressed in a white robe sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

<sup>6</sup> 'Don't be alarmed,' he said. 'You are looking for Jesus the Nazarene, who was crucified. He has risen! He is not here. See the place where they laid him. <sup>7</sup> But go, tell his disciples and Peter, "He is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you."'

<sup>8</sup> Trembling and bewildered, the women went out and fled from the tomb. They said nothing to anyone, because they were afraid.

[The earliest manuscripts and some other ancient witnesses do not have verses 9–20.]

<sup>9</sup> *When Jesus rose early on the first day of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had driven seven demons.* <sup>10</sup> *She went and told those who had been with him and who were mourning and weeping.* <sup>11</sup> *When they heard that Jesus was alive and that she had seen him, they did not believe it.*

(Mark 16:9-11)

Early on the first day of the week, while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene went to the tomb and saw that the stone had been removed from the entrance. <sup>2</sup> So she came running to Simon Peter and the other disciple, the one Jesus loved, and said, 'They have taken the Lord out of the tomb, and we don't know where they have put him!'

<sup>3</sup> So Peter and the other disciple started for the tomb. <sup>4</sup> Both were running, but the other disciple outran Peter and reached the tomb first. <sup>5</sup> He bent over and looked in at the strips of linen lying there but did not go in. <sup>6</sup> Then Simon Peter came along behind him and went straight into the tomb. He saw the strips of linen lying there, <sup>7</sup> as well as the cloth that had been wrapped round Jesus' head. The cloth was still lying in its place, separate from the linen. <sup>8</sup> Finally the other disciple, who had reached the tomb first, also went inside. He saw and believed. <sup>9</sup> (They still did not understand from Scripture that Jesus had to rise from the dead.) <sup>10</sup> Then the disciples went back to where they were staying.

<sup>11</sup> Now Mary stood outside the tomb crying. As she wept, she bent over to look into the tomb <sup>12</sup> and saw two angels in white, seated where Jesus' body had been, one at the head and the other at the foot.

<sup>13</sup> They asked her, 'Woman, why are you crying?'

'They have taken my Lord away,' she said, 'and I don't know where they have put him.'  
<sup>14</sup> At this, she turned round and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not realise that it was Jesus.

<sup>15</sup> He asked her, 'Woman, why are you crying? Who is it you are looking for?'  
Thinking he was the gardener, she said, 'Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will get him.'

<sup>16</sup> Jesus said to her, 'Mary.'

She turned towards him and cried out in Aramaic, 'Rabboni!' (which means 'Teacher').

<sup>17</sup> Jesus said, 'Do not hold on to me, for I have not yet ascended to the Father. Go instead to my brothers and tell them, "I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God."'

<sup>18</sup> Mary Magdalene went to the disciples with the news: 'I have seen the Lord!' And she told them that he had said these things to her.

(John 20:1-18)

## **2) The Women**

After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to look at the tomb.

<sup>2</sup> There was a violent earthquake, for an angel of the Lord came down from heaven and, going to the tomb, rolled back the stone and sat on it. <sup>3</sup> His appearance was like lightning, and his clothes were white as snow. <sup>4</sup> The guards were so afraid of him that they shook and became like dead men.

<sup>5</sup> The angel said to the women, 'Do not be afraid, for I know that you are looking for Jesus, who was crucified. <sup>6</sup> He is not here; he has risen, just as he said. Come and see the place where he lay. <sup>7</sup> Then go quickly and tell his disciples: "He has risen from the dead and is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see him." Now I have told you.'

<sup>8</sup> So the women hurried away from the tomb, afraid yet filled with joy, and ran to tell his disciples. <sup>9</sup> Suddenly Jesus met them. 'Greetings,' he said. They came to him, clasped his feet and worshipped him. <sup>10</sup> Then Jesus said to them, 'Do not be afraid. Go and tell my brothers to go to Galilee; there they will see me.'

(Matthew 28:1-10 NIV)

## **3) Cleopas and Friend, Emmaus Road**

*Afterwards Jesus appeared in a different form to two of them while they were walking in the country. <sup>13</sup> These returned and reported it to the rest; but they did not believe them either. (Mark 16:12-13)*

Now that same day two of them were going to a village called Emmaus, about seven miles<sup>1</sup> from Jerusalem. <sup>14</sup> They were talking with each other about everything that had happened. <sup>15</sup> As they talked and discussed these things with each other, Jesus himself came up and walked along with them; <sup>16</sup> but they were kept from recognising him.

<sup>17</sup> He asked them, 'What are you discussing together as you walk along?'

They stood still, their faces downcast. <sup>18</sup> One of them, named Cleopas, asked him, 'Are you the only one visiting Jerusalem who does not know the things that have happened there in these days?'

<sup>19</sup> 'What things?' he asked.

'About Jesus of Nazareth,' they replied. 'He was a prophet, powerful in word and deed before God and all the people. <sup>20</sup>The chief priests and our rulers handed him over to be sentenced to death, and they crucified him; <sup>21</sup>but we had hoped that he was the one who was going to redeem Israel. And what is more, it is the third day since all this took place. <sup>22</sup>In addition, some of our women amazed us. They went to the tomb early this morning <sup>23</sup>but didn't find his body. They came and told us that they had seen a vision of angels, who said he was alive. <sup>24</sup>Then some of our companions went to the tomb and found it just as the women had said, but they did not see Jesus.'

<sup>25</sup>He said to them, 'How foolish you are, and how slow to believe all that the prophets have spoken! <sup>26</sup>Did not the Messiah have to suffer these things and then enter his glory?' <sup>27</sup>And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he explained to them what was said in all the Scriptures concerning himself.

<sup>28</sup>As they approached the village to which they were going, Jesus continued on as if he were going further. <sup>29</sup>But they urged him strongly, 'Stay with us, for it is nearly evening; the day is almost over.' So he went in to stay with them.

<sup>30</sup>When he was at the table with them, he took bread, gave thanks, broke it and began to give it to them. <sup>31</sup>Then their eyes were opened and they recognised him, and he disappeared from their sight. <sup>32</sup>They asked each other, 'Were not our hearts burning within us while he talked with us on the road and opened the Scriptures to us?'

<sup>33</sup>They got up and returned at once to Jerusalem. There they found the Eleven and those with them, assembled together <sup>34</sup>and saying, 'It is true! The Lord has risen and has appeared to Simon.' <sup>35</sup>Then the two told what had happened on the way, and how Jesus was recognised by them when he broke the bread. (Luke 24:13-35)

#### **4) Simon Peter**

There they found the Eleven and those with them, assembled together <sup>34</sup>and saying, 'It is true! The Lord has risen and has appeared to Simon.'  
(Luke 24:33-34)

For what I received I passed on to you as of first importance: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, <sup>4</sup>that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures, <sup>5</sup>and that he appeared to Cephas, and then to the Twelve. (1 Corinthians 15:3-5)

#### **5) The Disciples behind locked doors**

*Later Jesus appeared to the Eleven as they were eating; he rebuked them for their lack of faith and their stubborn refusal to believe those who had seen him after he had risen.*  
(Mark 16:14)

While they were still talking about this, Jesus himself stood among them and said to them, 'Peace be with you.'

<sup>37</sup>They were startled and frightened, thinking they saw a ghost. <sup>38</sup>He said to them, 'Why are you troubled, and why do doubts rise in your minds? <sup>39</sup>Look at my hands and my feet. It is I myself! Touch me and see; a ghost does not have flesh and bones, as you see I have.'

<sup>40</sup>When he had said this, he showed them his hands and feet. <sup>41</sup>And while they still did not believe it because of joy and amazement, he asked them, 'Do you have anything

here to eat?' <sup>42</sup>They gave him a piece of broiled fish, <sup>43</sup>and he took it and ate it in their presence.

<sup>44</sup>He said to them, 'This is what I told you while I was still with you: everything must be fulfilled that is written about me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms.'

<sup>45</sup>Then he opened their minds so they could understand the Scriptures. <sup>46</sup>He told them, 'This is what is written: the Messiah will suffer and rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup>and repentance for the forgiveness of sins will be preached in his name to all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. <sup>48</sup>You are witnesses of these things. <sup>49</sup>I am going to send you what my Father has promised; but stay in the city until you have been clothed with power from on high.' (Luke 24:36-49)

On the evening of that first day of the week, when the disciples were together, with the doors locked for fear of the Jewish leaders, Jesus came and stood among them and said, 'Peace be with you!' <sup>20</sup>After he said this, he showed them his hands and side. The disciples were overjoyed when they saw the Lord. <sup>21</sup>Again Jesus said, 'Peace be with you! As the Father has sent me, I am sending you.' <sup>22</sup>And with that he breathed on them and said, 'Receive the Holy Spirit. <sup>23</sup>If you forgive anyone's sins, their sins are forgiven; if you do not forgive them, they are not forgiven.' (John 20:19-23)

## **40 Days - Acts 1:3**

6) Disciples with Thomas, one week later - John 20:24-29

7) 500 at once - 1 Corinthians 15:6

8) James - 1 Corinthians 15:7

9) Galilee Beach - John 21:1-25

10) Galilee Mountain - Matthew 28:16-20

Ascension - Mount of Olives - Acts 1:6-9

He appeared to them over a period of forty days and spoke about the kingdom of God. (Acts 1:3)

### **6) The Disciples with Thomas, one week later**

Now Thomas (also known as Didymus), one of the Twelve, was not with the disciples when Jesus came. <sup>25</sup>So the other disciples told him, 'We have seen the Lord!'

But he said to them, 'Unless I see the nail marks in his hands and put my finger where the nails were, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe.'

<sup>26</sup>A week later his disciples were in the house again, and Thomas was with them. Though the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them and said, 'Peace be with you!' <sup>27</sup>Then he said to Thomas, 'Put your finger here; see my hands. Reach out your hand and put it into my side. Stop doubting and believe.'

<sup>28</sup>Thomas said to him, 'My Lord and my God!'

<sup>29</sup>Then Jesus told him, 'Because you have seen me, you have believed; blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed.'

(John 20:24-29)



## **7) 500 at once**

After that, he appeared to more than five hundred of the brothers and sisters at the same time, most of whom are still living, though some have fallen asleep. (1 Corinthians 15:6)

## **8) James**

Then he appeared to James, then to all the apostles, <sup>8</sup> and last of all he appeared to me also, as to one abnormally born.  
(1 Corinthians 15:7-8)

## **9) Galilee Shore**

Afterwards Jesus appeared again to his disciples, by the Sea of Galilee. It happened this way: <sup>2</sup> Simon Peter, Thomas (also known as Didymus), Nathanael from Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee, and two other disciples were together. <sup>3</sup> 'I'm going out to fish,' Simon Peter told them, and they said, 'We'll go with you.' So they went out and got into the boat, but that night they caught nothing.

<sup>4</sup> Early in the morning, Jesus stood on the shore, but the disciples did not realise that it was Jesus.

<sup>5</sup> He called out to them, 'Friends, haven't you any fish?'

'No,' they answered.

<sup>6</sup> He said, 'Throw your net on the right side of the boat and you will find some.' When they did, they were unable to haul the net in because of the large number of fish.

<sup>7</sup> Then the disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, 'It is the Lord!' As soon as Simon Peter heard him say, 'It is the Lord,' he wrapped his outer garment round him (for he had taken it off) and jumped into the water. <sup>8</sup> The other disciples followed in the boat, towing the net full of fish, for they were not far from shore, about a hundred metres.

<sup>9</sup> When they landed, they saw a fire of burning coals there with fish on it, and some bread.

<sup>10</sup> Jesus said to them, 'Bring some of the fish you have just caught.' <sup>11</sup> So Simon Peter climbed back into the boat and dragged the net ashore. It was full of large fish, 153, but even with so many the net was not torn. <sup>12</sup> Jesus said to them, 'Come and have breakfast.' None of the disciples dared ask him, 'Who are you?' They knew it was the Lord. <sup>13</sup> Jesus came, took the bread and gave it to them, and did the same with the fish. <sup>14</sup> This was now the third time Jesus appeared to his disciples after he was raised from the dead.

<sup>15</sup> When they had finished eating, Jesus said to Simon Peter, 'Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?'

'Yes, Lord,' he said, 'you know that I love you.'

Jesus said, 'Feed my lambs.'

<sup>16</sup> Again Jesus said, 'Simon son of John, do you love me?'

He answered, 'Yes, Lord, you know that I love you.'

Jesus said, 'Take care of my sheep.'

<sup>17</sup> The third time he said to him, 'Simon son of John, do you love me?'

Peter was hurt because Jesus asked him the third time, 'Do you love me?' He said, 'Lord, you know all things; you know that I love you.'

## *The Lion of Judah*

Jesus said, 'Feed my sheep. <sup>18</sup>Very truly I tell you, when you were younger you dressed yourself and went where you wanted; but when you are old you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will dress you and lead you where you do not want to go.'

<sup>19</sup>Jesus said this to indicate the kind of death by which Peter would glorify God. Then he said to him, 'Follow me!'

<sup>20</sup>Peter turned and saw that the disciple whom Jesus loved was following them. (This was the one who had leaned back against Jesus at the supper and had said, 'Lord, who is going to betray you?') <sup>21</sup>When Peter saw him, he asked, 'Lord, what about him?'

<sup>22</sup>Jesus answered, 'If I want him to remain alive until I return, what is that to you? You must follow me.' <sup>23</sup>Because of this, the rumour spread among the believers that this disciple would not die. But Jesus did not say that he would not die; he only said, 'If I want him to remain alive until I return, what is that to you?'

<sup>24</sup>This is the disciple who testifies to these things and who wrote them down. We know that his testimony is true.

<sup>25</sup>Jesus did many other things as well. If every one of them were written down, I suppose that even the whole world would not have room for the books that would be written.

(John 21:1-25)

## **10) Galilee Mountain**

### **The great commission**

<sup>16</sup>Then the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain where Jesus had told them to go. <sup>17</sup>When they saw him, they worshipped him; but some doubted. <sup>18</sup>Then Jesus came to them and said, 'All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.

<sup>19</sup>Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup>and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.'

(Matthew 28:16-20)

## **THE ASCENSION**

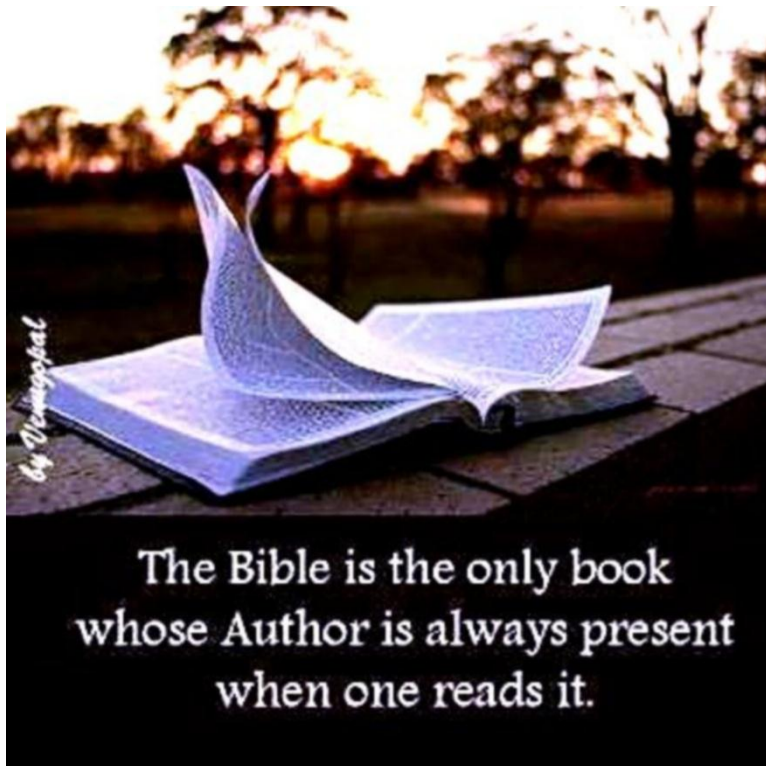
When he had led them out to the vicinity of Bethany, he lifted up his hands and blessed them. <sup>51</sup> While he was blessing them, he left them and was taken up into heaven. (Luke 24:50-51)

Then they gathered round him and asked him, 'Lord, are you at this time going to restore the kingdom to Israel?'

<sup>7</sup> He said to them: 'It is not for you to know the times or dates the Father has set by his own authority. <sup>8</sup> But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.'

<sup>9</sup> After he said this, he was taken up before their very eyes, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

<sup>10</sup> They were looking intently up into the sky as he was going, when suddenly two men dressed in white stood beside them. <sup>11</sup> 'Men of Galilee,' they said, 'why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven.' (Acts 1:6-11)



The Bible is the only book  
whose Author is always present  
when one reads it.

***Chapter 6***  
***The Spirit of Jesus***



*The Spirit of the Lion of the Tribe of Judah*

## ***God has given us the Spirit of His Son***

**God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts ...** (Galatians 4:6)

*What a wonderful verse on the Trinity! Paul points out that God our Father has made us heirs, not slaves. He has given us the same Spirit that indwelt his Son. The Spirit of Jesus is one with the Holy Spirit, the Spirit of God. He is not just an influence but a Person – One in the Godhead.*

“My point is this: heirs, as long as they are minors, are no better than slaves, though they are the owners of all the property; <sup>2</sup>but they remain under guardians and trustees until the date set by the father. <sup>3</sup>So with us; while we were minors, we were enslaved to the elemental spirits of the world. <sup>4</sup>But when the fullness of time had come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, <sup>5</sup>in order to redeem those who were under the law, so that we might receive adoption as children. <sup>6</sup>And because you are children, God has sent **the Spirit of his Son** into our hearts, crying, ‘Abba! Father!’ <sup>7</sup>So you are no longer a slave but a child, and if a child then also an heir, through God” (Galatians 4:1-7).

The Spirit of God’s Son, the Spirit of Jesus, is one with the Holy Spirit for God is One. Jesus said, “I am with you always” (Matthew 28:20). His Spirit is one with the Holy Spirit, the Spirit of God in us. This chapter is an applied theology as a devotional reflection on the Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, and the Spirit of the Lord as One.

This chapter about the Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, gives examples of how God’s Spirit, the Spirit of the Lord, moved upon and in people throughout history. That story continues today. I explore it further in many books, such as ***Living in the Spirit, Fruit and Gifts of the Spirit, Your Spiritual Gifts: to serve in love***, and in revival accounts such as ***Flashpoints of Revival*** and ***Revival Fires*** – [www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com).

Much of this chapter is reproduced from my book ***Living in the Spirit*** (2009). Here I have highlighted many key words and phrases in bold print.

The Holy Spirit, the Spirit of God, indwelt Jesus. He is also the Spirit of Jesus, the Spirit Jesus gives to us – “*He will glorify me, because he will take what is mine and declare it to you*” (John 16:14). So this chapter examines some implications for us of the Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, alive in us.

Luke, in The Acts, tells how the Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, led Paul and his team in their journeys as they went to Troas and then on the Pilippi.

“They went through the region of Phrygia and Galatia, having been forbidden by **the Holy Spirit** to speak the word in Asia. <sup>7</sup>When they had come opposite Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but **the Spirit of Jesus** did not allow them; <sup>8</sup>so, passing by Mysia, they went down to Troas” (Acts 16:6-7).

Later, from prison, Paul wrote to the church in Pilippi:

“Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, <sup>19</sup>for I know that through your prayers and God’s provision of **the Spirit of Jesus Christ** what has happened to me will turn out for my deliverance” (Philippians 1:18-19).

Paul explains how the Spirit of Christ, lives in us and gives life to us:

“But you are not in the flesh; you are in the Spirit, since the Spirit of God dwells in you. Anyone who does not have **the Spirit of Christ** does not belong to him. <sup>10</sup> But if Christ is in you, though the body is dead because of sin, the Spirit is life because of righteousness. <sup>11</sup> If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will give life to your mortal bodies also through his Spirit that dwells in you” (Romans 8:9-11).

Peter also explains how the Spirit of Christ moved on the prophets:

“Concerning this salvation, the prophets, who spoke of the grace that was to come to you, searched intently and with the greatest care, <sup>11</sup> trying to find out the time and circumstances to which **the Spirit of Christ** in them was pointing when he predicted the sufferings of the Messiah and the glories that would follow. <sup>12</sup> It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves but you, when they spoke of the things that have now been told you by those who have preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven. Even angels long to look into these things.” (1 Peter 1:10-11 NIV)

The Holy Spirit is God. God the Holy Spirit imparts God’s love to us. “The love of God has been poured out into our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us” (Romans 5:5). The Holy Spirit in us is also the Spirit of Jesus in us.

Scripture uses many titles and descriptions for God’s Spirit, including:

the Spirit (John 3:5, 6, 8; Romans 8:1, 2, 4, 5, 9, 10, 11, 13, 16, 23, 26, 27);

the Holy Spirit (Psalm 51:11; Luke 11:13);

God’s Holy Spirit (Ephesians 4:30);

my Spirit (Genesis 6:3; Matthew 12:18);

his Spirit (Isaiah 48:16; 1 John 2:27);

the Spirit of God (Genesis 1:2);

the Spirit of the Lord (Luke 4:18);

the Spirit of his Son (Galatians 4:6);

the Spirit of Christ (Romans 8:9);

the Spirit of Jesus (Acts 16:7)

the Spirit of Jesus Christ (Philippians 1:19)

the Spirit of truth (John 16:13);

the Counsellor, Helper, Advocate (John 14:16, 26; 16:7);

The term ‘the Spirit’ is used far more than any other in the Bible to refer to God’s Spirit. The Hebrew word *ruach* in the Old Testament and the Greek word *pneuma* in the New Testament can be translated spirit, wind, air, breath, power. Both words often refer to the Spirit of God as well as to the human spirit. In these studies, Spirit is always capitalised when referring to God.

Unfortunately many people think of the Father and the Son as personal beings and the Spirit of God as impersonal - like wind, air or breath. Those symbols give us vivid pictures of the Spirit’s activity, unseen but vital and powerful, all about us and within us,

## *The Lion of Judah*

giving and maintaining life. However, the Spirit is personal, not impersonal. He is the Spirit of Jesus, the Spirit of Christ.

God is Spirit and the Holy Spirit is God within and around us - the person of the Godhead who imparts God's life and love to us. The Spirit is the third person of the Trinity, truly God, all loving, all powerful and splendid in glory - the Holy Spirit of God. We can know him personally and intimately.

### ***The Holy Spirit is God***

God has given us the Spirit of his Son (Galatians 4:6). The Spirit of God is an equal part of the Trinity, not inferior. He is not just the messenger or servant of the Father and the Son, but co-equal. He delights in glorifying the Father and the Son. He is also God's Spirit, the Spirit of Jesus.

Many Bible passages describe the Holy Spirit as co-equal in the Trinity, fully one with the Father and the Son in the triune Godhead. Here are some examples of that Unity in Trinity.

**Triune formula:** baptised in the triune name:

"Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit ... " (Matthew 28:19).

Note that baptizing is in or into the one name, not three names.

**Triune speaking:** the Son speaks from God in the Spirit:

"For the one whom God has sent speaks the words of God, for God gives the Spirit without limit" (John 3:34 NIV).

**Triune promise:** the Father gives the Spirit with the Son;

"And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate, to be with you for ever. <sup>17</sup> This is the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, because he abides with you, and he will be in you. <sup>18</sup> 'I will not leave you orphaned; I am coming to you'" (John 14:16-18).

**Triune gift:** God gives the Spirit of his Son:

And because you are children, God has sent **the Spirit of his Son** into our hearts, crying, 'Abba! Father!' (Galatians 4:6),

**Triune benediction:** grace, love and fellowship:

"May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all" (2 Corinthians 13:14).

Note the beautiful description of God's being in the benediction of 2 Corinthians 13:14. It includes the amazing grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, the eternal love of God our Father, and the intimate fellowship of the Holy Spirit.

These truths enrich our lives as we realise we have intimate fellowship with our Triune God in and through his Spirit, the Holy Spirit, the Spirit of Jesus.



## ***The Holy Spirit is a Person***

The Holy Spirit, the Spirit of Jesus, has all the attributes of personality. He has ***intellect***, he searches everything (1 Corinthians 2:10-11; Ephesians 1:17), ***emotions***, he groans and grieves (Romans 8:26; Ephesians 4:30), and ***will***, he leads and chooses (Acts 16:6-7; 1 Corinthians 12:11).

He is not just a force but a person who restrains (Genesis 6:3), regenerates (John 3:5), teaches (John 14:26), witnesses and testifies (John 15:26), guides (John 16:13; Romans 8:14), convicts (John 16:7-8), leads (Acts 8:29), directs (Acts 13:3; 10:19-21), sends (Acts 13:4), appoints (Acts 20:28), works (1 Corinthians 12:11), searches (1 Corinthians 2:10), speaks (Revelation 2:7), and prays and intercedes (Romans 8:26).

He can be: lied to (Acts 5:3), resisted (Acts 7:51), grieved (Ephesians 4:30), quenched (1 Thessalonians 5:19), and blasphemed (Matthew 12:31).

The Holy Spirit is the Father's promised gift (Acts 1:4) who reveals the Father and the Son to us (Galatians 4:6; Romans 8:9-10), empowers us (Acts 1:8), and works in and through us to meet the needs of people as happened fully in the life of Jesus on earth (Luke 4:16-21).

Biblical words or terms used to describe these encounters with God's Spirit vary greatly. We have the problem of trying to express the inexpressible!

Terms used in the Bible to describe the specific impact or filling of the Spirit include these:

the Spirit was given – Numbers 11:16; John 7:39;  
the Spirit came upon -- Judges 3:10; Acts 19:5;  
the Spirit took control -- Judges 6:34; 1 Samuel 11:6; 16:13;  
the Spirit poured out -- Joel 2:28-28; Acts 10:45;  
the Spirit came down -- Matthew 3:16; Luke 3:22; John 1:33;  
the Spirit fell (or came down) -- Acts 10:44; 11:15;  
the Spirit received -- Acts 8:15-17; 19:2;  
baptised in or with the Spirit -- Luke 3:16; John 1:33; Acts 1:5;  
filled with the Spirit -- Acts 2:4; 9:17; Ephesians 5:18.

These examples give us a wonderful picture of the way God moved consistently by his Spirit in all history, revealed most fully in Jesus and active by his Spirit in the church and in the world.

## ***The Spirit of the Lord in the Old Testament***

The Bible begins with a profound revelation about the Spirit of God involved in creation, and the book of Hebrews reminds us that Jesus was involved in creation – a wonderful reminder of the unity of the Trinity from the beginning.

“In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. <sup>2</sup>Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and **the Spirit of God** was hovering over the waters.” (Genesis 1:1-2 NIV)

“In the past God spoke to our ancestors through the prophets at many times and in various ways, <sup>2</sup>but in these last days he has spoken to us by **his Son**, whom he appointed heir of all things, and **through whom also he made the universe**. <sup>3</sup>The Son is the radiance of God’s glory and the exact representation of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful word. After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.” (Hebrews 1:1-3 NIV)

The Son is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. <sup>16</sup>For **in him all things were created**: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things have been **created through him and for him**. <sup>17</sup>He is before all things, and in him all things hold together. <sup>18</sup>And he is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so that in everything he might have the supremacy. <sup>19</sup>For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in him, <sup>20</sup>and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through his blood, shed on the cross” (Colossians 1:15-19 NIV).

The Spirit of the Lord refers to God’s Spirit, also called the Spirit of Jesus in the New Testament.

### ***The Spirit of the Lord in Israel***

The Spirit of the Lord, or the Spirit of Yahweh (Jehovah), is seen in the Old Testament as the Spirit of God - the Spirit of the Sovereign Lord, Israel’s covenant God - coming upon people to fulfil God’s purpose in the earth. The Spirit of the Lord came upon Jesus, the chosen and anointed Messiah, so that he could fulfil God’s promises and purposes. The early church understood the same truth: the sovereign Lord gave his Spirit to the church to fulfil God’s purposes in the earth.

This perspective unites all Scripture in the unfolding purposes of God, brought into being by the Spirit of the Lord. It is another way of perceiving salvation history. Salvation is not just for individuals. The purposes of God involve the whole world, the whole of history and the whole of the cosmos.

Note the reference to the Spirit of the Lord in the following passages and especially the vision or pictures of the age to come or the end to which the Spirit is moving. That age, the Messianic age foretold by the Spirit-led prophets is fulfilled in Jesus and his eternal reign in the kingdom of God. That kingdom is here and now among us and also to be realized fully in the age to come.

Isaiah 11:1-2, the Spirit of the Lord will rest on a descendant of Jesse, David's father, with wisdom, understanding, counsel, might and knowledge. Jesus fulfilled this.

"A shoot shall come out from the stock of Jesse,  
and a branch shall grow out of his roots.  
<sup>2</sup> **The spirit of the LORD shall rest on him,  
the spirit of wisdom and understanding,  
the spirit of counsel and might,  
the spirit of knowledge and the fear of the LORD.**"

Micah 3:8, the Spirit of the Lord fills his servant with power, justice and might.

"But as for me, I am filled with power,  
with **the spirit of the LORD**,  
and with justice and might,  
to declare to Jacob his transgression  
and to Israel his sin."

Ezekiel 37:1-14, the Spirit of the Lord gives visions and breathes life into the dead. Note that 'breath' here may be translated 'wind' or 'spirit'.

"The hand of the LORD came upon me, and he brought me out by **the spirit of the LORD** and set me down in the middle of a valley; it was full of bones. <sup>2</sup> He led me all round them; there were very many lying in the valley, and they were very dry. <sup>3</sup> He said to me, 'Mortal, can these bones live?' I answered, 'O Lord GOD, you know.' <sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, 'Prophecy to these bones, and say to them: O dry bones, hear the word of the LORD. <sup>5</sup> Thus says the Lord GOD to these bones: I will cause breath to enter you, and you shall live. <sup>6</sup> I will lay sinews on you, and will cause flesh to come upon you, and cover you with skin, and put breath in you, and you shall live; and you shall know that I am the LORD.'

<sup>7</sup> So I prophesied as I had been commanded; and as I prophesied, suddenly there was a noise, a rattling, and the bones came together, bone to its bone. <sup>8</sup> I looked, and there were sinews on them, and flesh had come upon them, and skin had covered them; but there was no breath in them. <sup>9</sup> Then he said to me, 'Prophecy to the breath, prophesy, mortal, and say to the breath: Thus says the Lord GOD: Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe upon these slain, that they may live.' <sup>10</sup> I prophesied as he commanded me, and the breath came into them, and they lived, and stood on their feet, a vast multitude.

<sup>11</sup> Then he said to me, 'Mortal, these bones are the whole house of Israel. They say, "Our bones are dried up, and our hope is lost; we are cut off completely." <sup>12</sup> Therefore prophesy, and say to them, Thus says the Lord GOD: I am going to open your graves, and bring you up from your graves, O my people; and I will bring you back to the land of Israel. <sup>13</sup> And you shall know that I am the LORD, when I open your graves, and bring you up from your graves, O my people. <sup>14</sup> **I will put my spirit within you**, and you shall live, and I will place you on your own soil; then you shall know that I, the LORD, have spoken and will act, says the LORD."

Isaiah 61:1-3, the Spirit of the Lord anoints his servant for mission, fulfilled ultimately in Jesus

**The spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me,  
because the LORD has anointed me;**  
he has sent me to bring good news to the oppressed,  
to bind up the broken-hearted,  
to proclaim liberty to the captives,  
and release to the prisoners;  
<sup>2</sup> to proclaim the year of the LORD's favour,  
and the day of vengeance of our God;  
to comfort all who mourn;  
<sup>3</sup> to provide for those who mourn in Zion—  
to give them a garland instead of ashes,  
the oil of gladness instead of mourning,  
the mantle of praise instead of a faint spirit.  
They will be called oaks of righteousness,  
the planting of the LORD, to display his glory" (see Luke 4:18-19).

The Old Testament prophets spoke for God. They called God's people back to a right relationship with their Sovereign Lord and with one another.

The Spirit of the Lord came upon the prophets of Israel, and spoke through them. They announced God's purposes and judgements for his people. They were the guardians of the theocracy, God's rule.

This was costly. Many prophets were killed, as were John the Baptist, and Jesus, and many of those who followed Jesus. The Spirit of the Lord confronts the demonic powers in people and society. The kingdom of God challenges and transforms the kingdoms of this world.

The Old Testament tells of many people being filled with the Spirit:

**Joseph:** the Spirit gives ability (Genesis 41:38);

**Bezalel:** the Spirit fills with wisdom and skill (Exodus 35:30-33);

**Moses and the 70:** the Spirit resides and is given (Numbers 11:16-17);

**Balaam:** the Spirit inspires prophecy (Numbers 24:1-3a);

**Joshua:** the Spirit gives wisdom (Deuteronomy 34:9);

**Othniel:** the Spirit endows leadership (Judges 3:10);

**Gideon:** the Spirit takes control (Judges 6:34);

**Samson:** the Spirit gave strength (Judges 13:25; 14:6, 19; 15:14);

**Jephtha:** the Spirit came upon a warrior (Judges 11:29);

**Saul:** the Spirit provokes into action (1 Samuel 10:6-11; 11:6);

**David:** the Spirit claims a man to rule (1 Samuel 16:13);

**Jahaziel:** the Spirit came upon the prophet who announced "the battle is not yours, but God's (2 Chronicles 20:14-17).

**My servant:** the Spirit confers power (Isaiah 42:1; 61:1);

**Ezekiel:** the Spirit gives prophetic insight (Ezekiel 37:1).

These Old Testament accounts speak of the Spirit given to particular people in a particular way at a particular time for a particular task. Note the contrast with the New Testament descriptions of the Spirit given fully and permanently (e.g. John 1:33; 7:39; Acts 1:4-5).

The Old Testament prophets foresaw a time when the Spirit of the Lord would be fully revealed in the kingdom of God, especially in the Messiah himself, the Anointed One – anointed by God and filled with his Spirit. Matthew, writing especially for Jews, emphasized how Jesus fulfilled the prophecies of their Scriptures.

**'Here is my servant, whom I have chosen,**  
my beloved, with whom my soul is well pleased.  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.  
He will not wrangle or cry aloud,  
nor will anyone hear his voice in the streets.  
He will not break a bruised reed  
or quench a smouldering wick  
until he brings justice to victory.

**And in his name the Gentiles will hope.'**

(Matthew 12:15-21; see Isaiah 42:1-4)

Jesus, the Messiah, God's anointed servant, fulfilled those prophecies and reigns with God. He reigns in us and in the world by his Spirit.

Peter, preaching at Pentecost, saw prophecy about God's Spirit fulfilled:

"In the last days it will be, God declares,  
that I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh,  
and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy,  
and your young men shall see visions,  
and your old men shall dream dreams.

<sup>18</sup> Even upon my slaves, both men and women,  
in those days I will pour out my Spirit;  
and they shall prophesy. ...

<sup>21</sup> Then everyone who calls on the name of the Lord shall be saved."  
(Acts 2:17-18, 22; see Joel 2:28-32)

## ***The Spirit of the Lord in Jesus***

*Jesus was conceived in the power of the Holy Spirit, anointed by Spirit of God at his baptism, ministered in the power of the Spirit, and imparts his Spirit to us.*

### ***The Spirit in Jesus***

Luke records how the angel Gabriel told Mary that she would conceive Jesus by the power of the Spirit: “The Holy Spirit will come on you, and God’s power will rest upon you. For this reason the holy child will be called the Son of God” (Luke 1:35).

The stories in Luke surrounding Jesus’ birth make frequent reference to the Spirit’s activity (see Luke 1:15, 35, 41, 67; 2:25-27).

For about thirty years, Jesus matured as a Jewish male, worked as a craftsman in the family business, and would have supported his family. Then a major turning point came during the prophetic ministry of John the Baptist. John saw his main task as announcing the coming of the Messiah and preparing the people for that great event (Matthew 3:1-17; Mark 1:1-8; Luke 3:1-22; John 1:19-34).

Jesus’ experience of being filled with the Spirit was public and open, not a secret. God announced by his Spirit that Jesus was the Son of God, the Messiah, the one who would baptize us in the Spirit

“The next day he saw Jesus coming towards him and declared, ‘Here is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!’<sup>30</sup> This is he of whom I said, ‘After me comes a man who ranks ahead of me because he was before me.’<sup>31</sup> I myself did not know him; but I came baptizing with water for this reason, that he might be revealed to Israel.’<sup>32</sup> And John testified, ‘I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it remained on him.’<sup>33</sup> I myself did not know him, but the one who sent me to baptize with water said to me, ‘He on whom you see the Spirit descend and remain is the one who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.’<sup>34</sup> And I myself have seen and have testified that this is the Son of God.” (John 1:31-33).

The Spirit of God coming on Jesus at his baptism transformed his life. It launched him into three years of powerful and controversial ministry culminating in his death, resurrection and ascension.

It did not make Jesus any more holy. He was already holy.

It did not make Jesus more obedient. He was already obedient.

It did not make Jesus more divine. He was already divine.

It did anoint and empower Jesus for his mission, as he explained in Nazareth, quoting from Isaiah: “The Spirit of the Lord is upon me because he has anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor, he has sent me to heal the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and recovery of sight to the blind, to set at liberty those who are oppressed, to proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord” (Luke 4:18-19; see Isaiah 61:1-2).

The passage in Luke 4:18-19, where Jesus quotes from Isaiah, makes a dynamic link between Old Testament prophecy and New Testament fulfilment concerning the Spirit of the Lord.

Jesus recognised the work of the Spirit of the Lord as crucial to his ministry. He did no mighty works before the Spirit came upon him at his baptism. Luke, especially, sees this as pivotal in Jesus' life. **The Holy Spirit came upon him** (3:22), he returned from the Jordan **full of the Holy Spirit** (4:1), faced and overcame temptation being **led by the Spirit** (4:1), and then returned north to Galilee **in the power of the Spirit** (4:14). At Nazareth, Jesus interpreted his experience in terms of the Spirit of the Lord coming on him for the purposes described in Isaiah 61:1-3.

Jesus' ministry gives many examples of his words and his deeds which fulfilled this prophecy concerning the Spirit of the Lord, as Luke describes:  
bringing good news to the poor (Luke 4:38-44; 6:17-19);  
proclaiming liberty to captives (Luke 8:26-39; 11:14-23);  
giving sight to the blind (Luke 7:36-50; 18:35-43);  
setting free the oppressed (Luke 13:10-17; 17:11-19);  
announcing the Lord's salvation (Luke 10:21-22; 12:32-40; 18:15-30).

Jesus answered a question about him being the Messiah by referring to that charter:  
"John's disciples told him about all these things. Calling two of them, <sup>19</sup> he sent them to the Lord to ask, 'Are you the one who is to come, or should we expect someone else?'"

<sup>20</sup> When the men came to Jesus, they said, 'John the Baptist sent us to you to ask, "Are you the one who is to come, or should we expect someone else?"'

<sup>21</sup> At that very time Jesus cured many who had diseases, illnesses and evil spirits, and gave sight to many who were blind. <sup>22</sup> So he replied to the messengers, 'Go back and report to John what you have seen and heard: the blind receive sight, the lame walk, those who have leprosy are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, and the good news is proclaimed to the poor. <sup>23</sup> Blessed is anyone who does not stumble on account of me.'

(Luke 7:21-23).

Jesus' ministry demonstrated how the Spirit of the Lord was upon him enabling him to fulfil God's purposes. The Spirit of the Lord fulfils God's will in the world. Jesus saw his ministry in that context. So can we.

God's purposes were supremely fulfilled in Jesus' atoning death, his mighty resurrection and his ascension to glory where he now has all authority in heaven and on earth. He expresses that authority through the Spirit of Lord, his Spirit, in his people. The Holy Spirit continually glorifies Christ and reveals God's will to his people and to the world. He convicts the world of sin, righteousness and judgement by the resurrected Christ through his Spirit.

(John 16:8-15; Acts 2:32-39; 3:13-16; 17:30-31).

Our mission is to continue the ministry Jesus had. The Spirit of the Lord, the Spirit of Jesus, fulfils that work in and through us.

Jesus gave his disciples power and authority to do what he did (the twelve, Luke 9:1-6; the seventy-two, Luke 10:1-12). Then, after the resurrection he renewed that same commission:

## *The Lion of Judah*

Matthew 28:19-20, we are to obey all Jesus commanded them to do;  
Mark 16:15-18, this applies to everyone;  
Luke 24:45-49, Jesus' death and resurrection make it possible by his Spirit;  
John 20:19-22, we are sent as Jesus was sent by the Father in the Spirit's power;  
Acts 1:8, we are his witnesses to the whole earth, filled with the Spirit.

Further, Jesus promised us the power to do it. The Spirit of the Lord, the Spirit of Jesus, still empowers the servants of the Lord.

Matthew 28:18-20, all authority has been given to Jesus; he is with us:  
"Then Jesus came to them and said, 'All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. <sup>19</sup>Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, <sup>20</sup>and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely **I am with you always, to the very end of the age.**'"

Mark 16:17-18, Jesus gives believers power for mission:  
"Later he appeared to the eleven themselves as they were sitting at the table; and he upbraided them for their lack of faith and stubbornness, because they had not believed those who saw him after he had risen. <sup>15</sup>And he said to them, 'Go into all the world and proclaim the good news to the whole creation. <sup>16</sup>The one who believes and is baptized will be saved; but the one who does not believe will be condemned. <sup>17</sup>And **these signs will accompany those who believe:** by using my name they will cast out demons; they will speak in new tongues; <sup>18</sup>they will pick up snakes in their hands, and if they drink any deadly thing, it will not hurt them; they will lay their hands on the sick, and they will recover.'"

Luke 24:44-49, Jesus said he would send the promised power:  
"Then he said to them, 'These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you—that everything written about me in the law of Moses, the prophets, and the psalms must be fulfilled.' <sup>45</sup>Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, <sup>46</sup>and he said to them, 'Thus it is written, that the Messiah is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day, <sup>47</sup>and that repentance and forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem. <sup>48</sup>You are witnesses of these things. <sup>49</sup>And see, **I am sending upon you what my Father promised;** so stay here in the city until you have been **clothed with power from on high.**'"

John 20:19-23, Jesus breathed the Spirit on his followers:  
"When it was evening on that day, the first day of the week, and the doors of the house where the disciples had met were locked for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood among them and said, 'Peace be with you.' <sup>20</sup>After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. Then the disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord. <sup>21</sup>Jesus said to them again, 'Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, so I send you.' <sup>22</sup>When he had said this, **he breathed on them** and said to them, '**Receive the Holy Spirit.** <sup>23</sup>If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained.'"

Acts 1:1-9, Jesus promised that his followers would be baptised in the Spirit:  
"In the first book, Theophilus, I wrote about all that Jesus did and taught from the beginning <sup>2</sup>until the day when he was taken up to heaven, after giving instructions **through the Holy Spirit** to the apostles whom he had chosen. <sup>3</sup>After his suffering he presented himself alive to them by many convincing proofs, appearing to them over the



course of forty days and speaking about the kingdom of God. <sup>4</sup>While staying with them, he ordered them not to leave Jerusalem, but to wait there for **the promise of the Father**. 'This', he said, 'is what you have heard from me; <sup>5</sup>for John baptized with water, but **you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit** not many days from now.'

<sup>6</sup>So when they had come together, they asked him, 'Lord, is this the time when you will restore the kingdom to Israel?' <sup>7</sup>He replied, 'It is not for you to know the times or periods that the Father has set by his own authority. <sup>8</sup>But **you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you**; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.' <sup>9</sup>When he had said this, as they were watching, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight."

The Spirit of the Lord comes on us for mission, as on Jesus, and his disciples. This is the kingdom perspective: the Spirit of the Lord, the Spirit of Jesus, imparts power for mission.

Jesus, at the Last Supper, promised to send what the Father had promised – his Spirit.

'When the Advocate comes, whom **I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth** who comes from the Father, he will testify on my behalf. <sup>27</sup>You also are to testify because you have been with me from the beginning. (John 15:26-27)



## ***The Spirit of the Lord in Us***

*The Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, continues alive and active in us and in the world.*

### ***The Spirit in the Church***

In Jesus, the Spirit inaugurates the new age. This is pivotal in salvation history because the Spirit does not descend on Jesus merely as he descended on former leaders and prophets. The Spirit descends and remains permanently and fully in Jesus.

Also, unlike Old Testament leaders, Jesus has power and authority to transmit his experience of the Spirit to his followers.

(John 1:33; 20:21-23; Matthew 28:18-20; Acts 1:4-5).

These new dimensions of life in the Spirit are seen first and fully in Jesus, and made available to us:

1. The Spirit came upon Jesus permanently and fully;
2. Jesus imparts the Spirit to us; he baptises us in the Holy Spirit.

This new age of the Spirit is foretold by Jeremiah (Jeremiah 31:31-33), promised by Ezekiel (Ezekiel 36:26-27), prophesied by Joel (Joel 2:28-29), confirmed by John the Baptist (John 1:33), proclaimed by Jesus (John 16:7; Luke 24:49), recorded in Acts (Acts 1:4-5, 8).

So we come to Pentecost and four other narratives in Acts that record the coming of the Spirit on persons or groups of people. These passages dramatically show how the new age of the Spirit had begun, and how it broke through previous boundaries.

The following Bible passages are familiar to some people, but unfamiliar to others. They describe how the early church prayed for, received, and lived in the life and power of the Spirit:

Acts 2:1-4, 37-39 (the disciples and people in Jerusalem at Pentecost);

Acts 8:4-17 (the Samaritans when Peter and John prayed for them);

Acts 9:1-19 (Saul in Damascus when Ananias prayed for him);

Acts 10:30-33, 44-48 (and 11:12-18, Cornelius and Gentiles in Caesarea when Peter preached to them);

Acts 19:1-7 (the disciples in Ephesus when Paul prayed for them).

What led to these encounters with the Holy Spirit and what followed? None were accidental or automatic. All of them happened through prayer and seeking more from God.

Note the recurring themes of repentance toward God; believing in Jesus; and receiving the Spirit.

How did the Spirit come? He came then in many ways, and still does: with prayer, after repentance, usually in the company of other believers, with the laying on of hands, and with immediate results in the lives of people and in the community.

Demonstrations of the Spirit's presence and power accompanied the coming of the Spirit in the early church. These included tongues, powerful preaching, healings, prophecies, and manifestations of fire and the sound of a mighty wind. Those manifestations differed at different times.

The Spirit empowered the church for its mission in the world: to witness, evangelise, heal, and deliver people from bondage and oppression; to continue the ministry of Jesus in his church (Acts 1:8).

The Spirit of the Lord gives freedom and liberty as we are transformed from glory to glory.

"Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. <sup>18</sup> And all of us, with unveiled faces, seeing the glory of the Lord as though reflected in a mirror, are being transformed into the same image from one degree of glory to another; for this comes from the Lord, the Spirit."  
(2 Corinthians 3:17-18)

### ***The Spirit in us***

The Spirit's empowering presence is creatively varied within us all. Helpful insights can be found in the symbols of the Spirit used in the gospels. The Spirit of our God comes in many ways for many purposes, for instance:

**fire:** refining and purifying, warming and glowing (Matthew 3:11; Luke 24:32);

**dove:** signifying gentleness, peace and purity (Matthew 3:16; compare 10:16);

**wind:** ceaseless action, freedom, and unpredictability (John 3:8; compare Acts 2:2);

**breath:** giving life, renewing, resuscitating, and reviving (John 20:22; compare Genesis 2:7);

**water:** giving life, satisfying, quenching thirst (John 7:37-39; compare 4:14).

Jesus told his followers to wait till they were filled with the Spirit, and then they would witness for him in the power of his Spirit.

The New Testament uses the term 'filled with the Spirit' for:

an initial impact, release of, or baptism in the Spirit (Acts 2:4; 9:17);

specific encounters with or anointing by the Spirit (Acts 4:8, 31); and,

the ongoing Spirit-filled life (Ephesians 5:18).

Scripture clearly emphasizes the need to be filled with the Spirit. The gospel story and the story of the church show the importance of being filled with the Spirit (Luke 4:1; Acts 6:3,5, 8; 7:55; 10:38; 11:24; 13:52). Yet we often avoid this reality for ourselves! Why?

Some common hesitations may be:

**doubt:** if I ask, will anything really happen?

**unworthiness:** I'm not good enough.

## *The Lion of Judah*

**caution:** yes, but! what of fanatics? what if ... ?

**fear:** I don't know what will happen.

**control:** I won't allow anything unusual.

**pride:** I don't need this. I'm okay.

**doctrine:** our branch of the church doesn't teach this.

**past hurts:** once bitten, twice shy! is it divisive?

Remember that God loves us and only gives good gifts to us including his Spirit (Luke 11:13). The Spirit is the Spirit of Jesus, full of compassion, forgiveness, grace, and beauty.

Other attitudes about being filled with God's Spirit can be:

**faith:** I trust God. The Lord will bless.

**hope:** there's more yet, for us all.

**love:** God is love, and I love my God.

**anticipation:** I look forward to what God will do.

**expectation:** good things will happen, as in Scripture.

**enthusiasm:** let's receive all the Lord has for us.

Jesus expected his followers to be filled with the Spirit, empowered by the Spirit, or baptised in the Spirit (Luke 24:49; Acts 1-4-5, 8). He taught that this is God's will for us. He wants to give us his Spirit to fill our lives.

We give good gifts to our children. Jesus used this fact to show us how God our Father wants us to have his Spirit fill our lives: "If you then, being evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!" (Luke 11:13).

Note that in Luke 11:9-10, six times Jesus promises that God will give what we need. We need to ask, seek and knock, and we will receive, find, and have the door opened for us.

How do we receive the gift of the Spirit? Whether we think of this as part of conversion, or as being empowered, or as living a fully Spirit-filled life, the answer is the same! A simple ABC may help. We just **Ask - Believe - Commit** – to act on that faith.

We may ask and believe on our own, knowing that God is with us, and pours out his love into our hearts by his Spirit.

We may ask and believe with others who pray for us.

We can receive as a child receives from a good and loving father, with trust and gratitude.

We receive in faith. Feelings vary. Often there is a sense of peace and calm. Sometimes we melt inside as God's love graciously fills us in a new way.

However, we may feel nothing at the time of praying together. That's okay. We trust God to answer our prayer and give his Spirit, whether we feel anything or not. And we go on trusting.

Many people have asked in faith, felt nothing spectacular, and then later on discovered that God had indeed answered their prayer because they found more and more evidence of the Spirit's presence and power in their lives, especially as they prayed for others or helped others.

What about tongues? Some groups emphasize this evidence of the Spirit's infilling. When we pray for the fullness of the Spirit, we may experience this release, and many people have a prayer language which is very meaningful to them. That's beautiful, and biblical. This gift involves speaking mysteries to God (1 Corinthians 14:2) in worship, praise, adoration, and prayer beyond our limited conscious capacity. However, we ought to avoid pressing our experience onto others. People are converted and filled with the Spirit in many different ways.

The gift of tongues is an evidence of the Spirit's release. There are others. We can, of course, be open to this and all the gifts of the Spirit, ask for them, and expect them, but we should avoid pressing others into our mould. Our loving God gives the gracious Spirit freely, without coercion, as we ask, seek and knock.

More important than any specific gift of the Spirit is the faith, hope and love God gives us by his Spirit.

Gifts of God's Spirit without love count for nothing at all as Paul so strongly shows in 1 Corinthians 13 – the love chapter. We may have amazing gifts of the Spirit, but if we do not have love we are nothing and it counts for nothing (verses 1-3).

### ***The Spirit leads us***

God guides. The Lord leads by the Spirit within us. This has been the testimony of God's people in Scripture and in history. As the wind of the Spirit blows on us, we can hoist our sail to be carried on the ocean of God's love further than we've ever been before.

Some people are content to hoist a small sail and catch a little of the wind of the Spirit. Others, by faith, hoist a large sail to catch more of the same wind. Here are some examples from Scripture of people specifically led by the Spirit of the Lord:

Genesis 24:27, 48 (Abraham's servant led by the Lord);  
Exodus 13:17-18 (the Lord led the Israelites out of Egypt, see also Deuteronomy 8:2; 29:5; Psalm 78:52-53; Amos 2:10);  
Psalm 107:7 (the Lord led those who called out for help);  
Matthew 4:1; Luke 4:1 (the Spirit led Jesus);  
Acts 13:2 (the Spirit led the church to send missionaries);  
Acts 15:28 (church decisions led by the Spirit);  
Acts 16:6-7 (Paul's group led to Europe by the Spirit);  
Romans 8:14 (God's children are led by the Spirit);  
Galatians 5:18 (the Spirit leads in freedom from legalism).

Jesus promised his followers that they would be led by the Spirit. Those promises still apply now:

John 14:16 (the Spirit helps and strengthens us);  
John 14:17 (the Spirit reveals the truth about God);  
John 14:26 (the Spirit teaches us and reminds us);  
John 15:26 (the Spirit reveals Christ to us);  
John 16:7-8 (the Spirit convicts people);  
John 16:13-15 (the Spirit leads into all truth).

Note the intimate nature of that relationship. The Spirit's leading is personal, real and available to us all. However, that leading may not always be clear, or may be given later than we want or expect it. The Spirit of Jesus may change our plans and open new horizons for us as happened with Paul:

"Paul and his companions travelled throughout the region of Phrygia and Galatia, having been kept by **the Holy Spirit** from preaching the word in the province of Asia. <sup>7</sup>When they came to the border of Mysia, they tried to enter Bithynia, but **the Spirit of Jesus** would not allow them to. <sup>8</sup>So they passed by Mysia and went down to Troas" (Acts 16:6-7).

"Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, <sup>19</sup>for I know that through your prayers and God's provision of **the Spirit of Jesus Christ** what has happened to me will turn out for my deliverance" (Philippians 1:18-19).

### ***The Spirit leads personally***

We can all live and grow in the Spirit personally, becoming more sensitive and responsive to him and his leading.

Romans 8 is about living in the Spirit. Like other great chapters on major themes (Hebrews 11 on faith, 1 Corinthians 13 on love, 1 Corinthians 15 on resurrection) this passage in Romans throws brilliant light on its theme, being led by the Spirit.

The Holy Spirit in Romans 8 is described as:  
the Spirit (verses 2, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 13, 15, 23, 26, 27);  
the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus (verse 2);  
the Spirit of God (verse 11);  
Spirit of adoption (verse 15)  
God's Spirit (verse 9, 14, 16);  
his Spirit (verse 11).

Paul had been discussing the inner conflict we all experience. *We want to do what is good, but we don't do it* (7:18-19). Our minds may understand God's law, but our human nature fails to live it. Only God can save us from this condition, through our Lord Jesus Christ (7:25). Then the Spirit of God frees us as we live in the Spirit. "Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom" (2 Corinthians 3:17).

The Spirit is mentioned 17 times in the first 17 verses of chapter 8 in Romans, and even more in the rest of the chapter. The whole chapter describes living in the Spirit.

Note these wonderful aspects of living in the Spirit from those verses:

- v. 1: no condemnation; freedom from guilt
- v. 2: union with Christ Jesus
- v. 3: God acted to overcome sin
- v. 4: God's righteous requirements are met
- v. 5: our minds can be controlled by the Spirit
- v. 6: being controlled by the Spirit gives life and peace
- v. 7: we cannot obey God in our own strength
- v. 8: we cannot please God in our own strength
- v. 9: we can live as the Spirit leads us
- v. 10: we have been put right with God in the Spirit
- v. 11: the Spirit gives resurrection life to our bodies
- v. 12: our obligation is to live free from bondage
- v. 13: we live in the Spirit's power as we reject sin
- v. 14: as God's children we are led by God's Spirit
- v. 15: we have intimate union with our Father, unafraid with full rights
- v. 16: we have intimate union with God's Spirit
- v. 17: we will inherit God's blessings with Christ

Present blessings and future destiny in the Spirit include these:

the Spirit leads us and leads creation into freedom (verses 18-25);

the Spirit helps us in our praying (verses 26-27);

God's purpose is being fulfilled (verses 28-30);

God's love in Christ Jesus is ours always (verses 31-39).

### ***The Spirit leads communally***

Together, we can respond powerfully and effectively to the Spirit's leading in ministry. All of us can be more like Jesus in our care for others in the power of the Spirit.

The Spirit often came in power on people responding to God together. Here are some examples:

John 1:29-41, Jesus was filled with the Spirit in public:

"Then John gave this testimony: 'I saw the Spirit come down from heaven as a dove and remain on him. <sup>33</sup>And I myself did not know him, but the one who sent me to baptise with water told me, 'The man on whom you see the Spirit come down and remain is the one who will baptise with the Holy Spirit.' <sup>34</sup>I have seen and I testify that this is God's Chosen One'" (NIV).

John 20:19-23, Jesus breathed the Spirit upon the disciples, and commissioned them:

"Again Jesus said, 'Peace be with you! As the Father has sent me, I am sending you.' <sup>22</sup>And with that he breathed on them and said, 'Receive the Holy Spirit' (NIV).

Acts 2:1-4, Pentecost came at a prayer meeting where they had unity together:

"When the day of Pentecost came, they were all together in one place. <sup>2</sup>Suddenly a sound like the blowing of a violent wind came from heaven and filled the whole house where they were sitting. <sup>3</sup>They saw what seemed to be tongues of fire that separated and came to rest on each of them. <sup>4</sup>All of them were filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit enabled them" (NIV).

## *The Lion of Judah*

Acts 8:14-17, Peter and John prayed with powerful effect for those evangelised by Philip:

“When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they sent Peter and John to Samaria. <sup>15</sup>When they arrived, they prayed for the new believers there that they might receive the Holy Spirit, <sup>16</sup>because the Holy Spirit had not yet come on any of them; they had simply been baptised in the name of the Lord Jesus. <sup>17</sup>Then Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit” (NIV).

Acts 9:17-19, Ananias prayed for Saul who was filled with the Spirit and healed after three days of prayer and fasting:

“Then Ananias went to the house and entered it. Placing his hands on Saul, he said, ‘Brother Saul, the Lord – Jesus, who appeared to you on the road as you were coming here – has sent me so that you may see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit.’ <sup>18</sup>Immediately, something like scales fell from Saul’s eyes, and he could see again. He got up and was baptised, <sup>19</sup>and after taking some food, he regained his strength” (NIV).

Acts 10:44-48, Peter preached and the Spirit fell on the whole group of Gentiles:

“While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit came on all who heard the message. <sup>45</sup>The circumcised believers who had come with Peter were astonished that the gift of the Holy Spirit had been poured out even on Gentiles. <sup>46</sup>For they heard them speaking in tongues and praising God.

Then Peter said, <sup>47</sup>‘Surely no one can stand in the way of their being baptised with water. They have received the Holy Spirit just as we have’” (NIV).

Acts 19:5-7, Paul prayed for a dozen men who were filled with the Spirit together:

“When Paul placed his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them, and they spoke in tongues and prophesied. <sup>7</sup>There were about twelve men in all” (NIV).

This still happens today. Many of the strongest moves of the Spirit of God today happen to groups of people seeking him together.

*Flashpoints of Revival* (see Appendix) gives over 50 examples of powerful moves of God’s Spirit on people, leading to revival. The second edition (2009) includes further examples of whole communities transformed, including ecological renewal.

The Spirit of the Lord, the Spirit of Jesus, not only transforms individuals, churches, and communities, but also creation as in ecological renewal.



## **Testimonies**

History and current experience are full of examples of people being filled with the Spirit of Jesus, the Holy Spirit. Jesus was filled with the Spirit at his baptism. The disciples were at Pentecost. The Samaritans were when Peter and John prayed for them. Paul was when Ananias prayed for him in Damascus. Cornelius and his household were while Peter was preaching. Believers in Ephesus were when Paul prayed for them. It still happens.

Here are some examples from history. Most of these are reproduced here from my books *Flashpoints of Revival* and *Revival Fires*.

### ***Nicholas Zinzendorf and the Moravians in Saxony, Germany***

No one present could tell exactly what happened on the Wednesday morning of the specially called communion service. The glory of the Lord came upon them so powerfully that they hardly knew if they were on earth or in heaven. The Spirit of God moved powerfully on those three hundred refugees in Saxony in 1727. One of their historians wrote:

[Church history] “abounds in records of special outpourings of the Holy Ghost, and verily the thirteenth of August, 1727, was a day of the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. We saw the hand of God and his wonders, and we were all under the cloud of our fathers baptized with their Spirit. The Holy Ghost came upon us and in those days great signs and wonders took place in our midst. From that time scarcely a day passed but what we beheld his almighty workings amongst us. A great hunger after the Word of God took possession of us so that we had to have three services every day, at 5.0 and 7.30 a.m. and 9.0 p.m. Every one desired above everything else that the Holy Spirit might have full control. Self-love and self-will, as well as all disobedience, disappeared and an overwhelming flood of grace swept us all out into the great ocean of Divine Love.”<sup>1</sup>

### ***John and Charles Wesley and George Whitefield in London, England***

**John Wesley** found strong motivation for evangelism at a conversion experience at the age of 35 while hearing Martin Luther’s Preface to the Epistle to the Romans read at a meeting in Aldersgate Street, London. “About a quarter before nine while he was describing the change which God works in the heart through faith in Christ, I felt my heart strangely warmed, I felt I did trust in Christ, Christ alone for salvation, and an assurance was given to me that he had taken away my sins, even mine, and saved me from the law of sin and death.” From then on he resolved “to Promote as far as I am able vital Practical religion and by the grace of God to beget, preserve, and increase the life of God in the souls of men.”

He told how he and others including his brother Charles and George Whitefield with about 60 people were touched by God at a love feast in Fetter Lane, London: “About three in the morning, as we were continuing instant in prayer, the power of God came mightily upon us, insomuch that many cried out for exceeding joy, and many fell to the ground. As soon as we were recovered a little from that awe and amazement at the

---

<sup>1</sup> John Greenfield, 1927, *Power from on High*, Christian Literature Crusade (Reprint), p. 14.

presence of his majesty, we broke out with one voice, 'We praise Thee, O God, we acknowledge Thee to be the Lord.'"<sup>2</sup>

***Charles Finney in Adams, North America***

Charles Finney (1792-1875) became well known in revivals in the nineteenth century. A keen sportsman and young lawyer, he had a mighty empowering by God's Spirit on the night of his conversion on Wednesday 10 October 1821. That morning the Holy Spirit convicted him on his way to work. So he spent the morning in the woods near his small town of Adams in New York State, praying. There he surrendered fully to God. He walked to his law office that afternoon profoundly changed and in the afternoon assisted his employer Squire Wright to set up a new office. That night he was filled with the Spirit. He describes that momentous night in his autobiography:

"By evening we had the books and furniture adjusted, and I made a good fire in an open fireplace, hoping to spend the evening alone. Just at dark Squire W--, seeing that everything was adjusted, told me good night and went to his home. I had accompanied him to the door, and as I closed the door and turned around my heart seemed to be liquid within me. All my feelings seemed to rise and flow out and the thought of my heart was, "I want to pour my whole soul out to God." The rising of my soul was so great that I rushed into the room back of the front office to pray.

"There was no fire and no light in this back room; nevertheless it appeared to me as if it were perfectly light. As I went in and shut the door after me, it seemed to me as if I met the Lord Jesus Christ face to face. It seemed to me that I saw him as I would see any other man. He said nothing, but looked at me in such a manner as to break me right down at his feet. It seemed to me a reality that he stood before me, and I fell down at his feet and poured out my soul to him. I wept aloud like a child and made such confession as I could with my choked words. It seemed to me that I bathed his feet with my tears, and yet I had no distinct impression that I touched him.

"I must have continued in this state for a good while, but my mind was too much absorbed with the interview to remember anything that I said. As soon as my mind became calm enough I returned to the front office and found that the fire I had made of large wood was nearly burned out. But as I turned and was about to take a seat by the fire, I received a mighty baptism of the Holy Spirit. Without any expectation of it, without ever having the thought in my mind that there was any such thing for me, without any memory of ever hearing the thing mentioned by any person in the world, the Holy Spirit descended upon me in a manner that seemed to go through me, body and soul. I could feel the impression, like a wave of electricity, going through and through me. Indeed it seemed to come in waves of liquid love, for I could not express it in any other way. It seemed like the very breath of God. I can remember distinctly that it seemed to fan me, like immense wings.

"No words can express the wonderful love that was spread abroad in my heart. I wept aloud with joy and love. I literally bellowed out the unspeakable overflow of my heart. These waves came over me, and over me, and over me, one after another, until I remember crying out, "I shall die if these waves continue to pass over me." I said, "Lord, I cannot bear any more," yet I had no fear of death.

---

<sup>2</sup> Idle, C ed., 1986, *The Journal of John Wesley*, Lion, pages 46, 55.

That night a member of the church choir which Finney led called in at his office, amazed to find the former sceptic in a “state of loud weeping” and unable to talk to him for some time. That young friend left and soon returned with an elder from the church who was usually serious and rarely laughed. “When he came in,” Finney observed, “I was very much in the state in which I was when the young man went out to call him. He asked me how I felt and I began to tell him. Instead of saying anything he fell into a most spasmodic laughter. It seemed as if it was impossible for him to keep from laughing from the very bottom of his heart.”<sup>3</sup>

### ***Dwight Lyman Moody in New York, North America***

D. L. Moody (1837-1899), converted in 1855, later led powerful evangelistic campaigns in America and England. Two women in his church prayed constantly that he would be filled with the Spirit, and his yearning for God continued to increase. While visiting New York in 1871 to raise funds for churches and orphanages destroyed in the Chicago fire of October that year, in which his home, church sanctuary and the YMCA buildings were destroyed, he had a deep encounter with God. He wrote:

“I was crying all the time God would fill me with his Spirit. Well, one day in the city of New York - oh, what a day! - I cannot describe it, I seldom refer to it; it is almost too sacred an experience to name. Paul had an experience of which he never spoke for fourteen years. I can only say that God revealed Himself to me, and I had such an experience of His love that I had to ask him to stay his hand. I went to preaching again. The sermons were not different; I did not present any new truths; and yet hundreds were converted. I would not be placed back where I was before that blessed experience for all the world - it would be as the small dust of the balance.”<sup>4</sup>

On a visit to Britain he heard Henry Varley say, “The world has yet to see what God will do with a man fully consecrated to him.” He resolved to be that man.

### ***Evan Roberts, in Loughor, Wales***

Born in Loughor in Glamorgan, between Swansea and Llanely, Evan Roberts (1878-1951) was an exemplary school pupil. At twelve he began working in the mine with his father. He founded a Sunday school for the children of miners, and decided to become a preacher. Constantly he read the Bible, even in the mine. He published poems in the *Cardiff Times* under the pseudonym of Bwlchydd, learned shorthand, and taught himself to be a blacksmith. He describes his encounters with the Spirit as follows:

“One Friday evening that spring (1904), as I was praying at my bedside before going to bed, I was taken up into a great expanse - without time or space. It was communion with God. Up to that time I had only had a God who was far off. That evening I was afraid, but that fear has never come back. I trembled so violently that the bed shook, and my brother was awakened and took hold of me, thinking I was ill.

---

<sup>3</sup> Helen Wessel, 1977, *The Autobiography of Charles Finney*. Bethany, pages 20-22.

<sup>4</sup> W R Moody, 1900, *The Life of D. L. Moody*, Revell, p. 149.

## *The Lion of Judah*

“After this experience I woke each night about one o’clock in the morning. It was the more strange, as usually I slept like a log and no noise in my room was enough to wake me. From one o’clock I was taken up into communion with God for about four hours. What it was I cannot tell you, except that it was of God. About five o’clock I was again allowed to sleep until about nine o’clock. I was then taken up again and carried away in the same experience as in the early hours of the morning, until about midday or one o’clock.

“At home they questioned me, and asked why I got up so late ... but these things are too holy to speak of. This experience went on for about three months.<sup>5</sup>

He entered the Calvinistic Methodist Academy at Newcastle Emlyn in mid-September 1904. He was convinced revival would touch all Wales and eventually he led a small band all over the country praying and preaching.

Students from the Academy, including Evan Roberts and his room-mate Sidney Evans, attended the meetings of Presbyterian evangelist, Seth Joshua’s meetings in Blaenannerch. There on Thursday 29 September, Seth Joshua closed the 7am meeting before breakfast crying out in Welsh, “Lord ... bend us.” Evan Roberts remembered, “It was the Spirit that put the emphasis for me on ‘Bend us.’ ‘That is what you need,’ said the Spirit to me. And as I went out I prayed, O Lord, bend me.”<sup>6</sup> During the 9am. meeting, Evan Roberts eventually prayed aloud after others had prayed. He knelt with his arms over the seat in front, bathed in perspiration as he agonised in prayer. He regarded that encounter with the Spirit as crucial in launching him into his revival ministry which began one month later.

### ***Djiniyini Gondarra, in Elcho Island, Australia***

The Lord poured out the Holy Spirit on Elcho Island in northern Australia on Thursday, 14 March, 1979. Djiniyini Gondarra was then the Uniting Church minister in the town of Galiwin’ku at the south of the island. He had been away on holidays to Sydney and Brisbane, returning on the late afternoon Missionary Aviation Fellowship flight.

He was travel weary and just wanted to unpack and get to bed early. Many of the people, however, had been praying for months, and especially every day while he had been away, so they wanted to have prayer and Bible study with him in his home. This is his account of that Pentecost among Australian Aborigines in the Arnhem Land churches across the north of Australia:

“After the evening dinner, we called our friends to come and join us in the Bible Class meeting. We just sang some hymns and choruses translated into Gupapuynu and into Djambarrpuynu. There were only seven or eight people who were involved or came to the Bible Class meeting, and many of our friends didn’t turn up. We didn’t get worried about it.

---

<sup>5</sup> Walter Hollenweger, 1972, *The Pentecostals*, Augsburg, pages 179-180.

<sup>6</sup> Eifion Evans, 1969, *The Welsh Revival of 1904*, Evangelical Press, page 70.

"I began to talk to them that this was God's will for us to get together this evening because God had planned this meeting through them so that we will see something of his great love which will be poured out on each one of them. I said a word of thanks to those few faithful Christians who had been praying for renewal in our church, and I shared with them that I too had been praying for the revival or the renewal for this church and for the whole of Arnhem Land churches, because to our heavenly Father everything is possible. He can do mighty things in our churches throughout our great land.

"These were some of the words of challenge I gave to those of my beloved brothers and sisters. Gelung, my wife, also shared something of her experience of the power and miracles that she felt deep down in her heart when she was about to die in Darwin Hospital delivering our fourth child. It was God's power that brought the healing and the wholeness in her body.

"I then asked the group to hold each other's hands and I began to pray for the people and for the church, that God would pour out his Holy Spirit to bring healing and renewal to the hearts of men and women, and to the children.

"Suddenly we began to feel God's Spirit moving in our hearts and the whole form of our prayer suddenly changed and everybody began to pray in the Spirit and in harmony. And there was a great noise going on in the room and we began to ask one another what was going on.

"Some of us said that God had now visited us and once again established his kingdom among his people who have been bound for so long by the power of evil. Now the Lord is setting his church free and bringing us into the freedom of happiness and into reconciliation and to restoration.

"In that same evening the word just spread like the flames of fire and reached the whole community in Galiwin'ku. Gelung and I couldn't sleep at all that night because people were just coming for the ministry, bringing the sick to be prayed for, for healing. Others came to bring their problems. Even a husband and wife came to bring their marriage problem, so the Lord touched them and healed their marriage.

"Next morning the Galiwin'ku Community once again became the new community. The love of Jesus was being shared and many expressions of forgiveness were taking place in the families and in the tribes. Wherever I went I could hear people singing and humming Christian choruses and hymns! Before then I would have expected to hear only fighting and swearing and many other troublesome things that would hurt your feelings and make you feel sad. ...

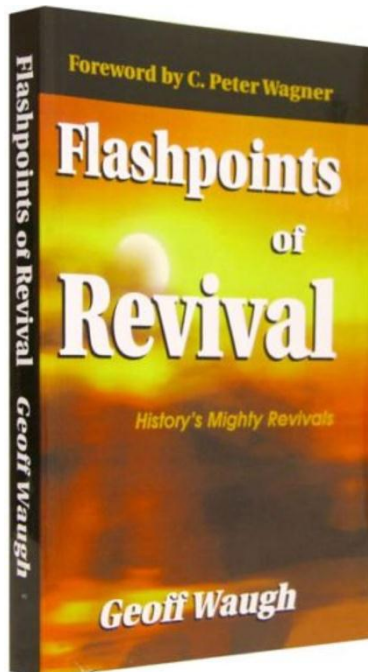
"There was a great revival that swept further west. I would describe these experiences like a wild bush fire burning from one side of Australia to the other side of our great land. The experience of revival in Arnhem Land is still active in many of our Aboriginal parishes and the churches.

"We would like to share these experiences in many white churches where doors are closed to the power of the Holy Spirit. It has always been my humble prayer that the

## *The Lion of Judah*

whole of Australian Christians, both black and white, will one day be touched by this great and mighty power of the living God.”<sup>7</sup>

*These testimonies all show how God continues to pour out His Spirit.*



---

<sup>7</sup> Djiniyini Gondarra, 1991, *Let My People Go*, UCA, pages 14-19; also 1993, *Renewal Journal*, No. 1.

## Summary

*I want to add this reminder of how the Spirit of Jesus, the Spirit of the Lord, is with us and within us.*

“And because you are children, God has sent **the Spirit of his Son** into our hearts, crying, ‘Abba! Father!’ <sup>7</sup> So you are no longer a slave but a child, and if a child then also an heir, through God” (Galatians 4:6-7).

“They went through the region of Phrygia and Galatia, having been forbidden by **the Holy Spirit** to speak the word in Asia. <sup>7</sup> When they had come opposite Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but **the Spirit of Jesus** did not allow them; <sup>8</sup> so, passing by Mysia, they went down to Troas” (Acts 16:6-7).

“Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, <sup>19</sup> for I know that through your prayers and God’s provision of **the Spirit of Jesus Christ** what has happened to me will turn out for my deliverance” (Philippians 1:18-19).

“But you are not in the flesh; you are in the Spirit, since the Spirit of God dwells in you. Anyone who does not have **the Spirit of Christ** does not belong to him. <sup>10</sup> But if Christ is in you, though the body is dead because of sin, the Spirit is life because of righteousness. <sup>11</sup> If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will give life to your mortal bodies also through his Spirit that dwells in you” (Romans 8:9-11).

**Jesus, the Lamb of God and the Lion of Judah has conquered.**

### **The Scroll and the Lamb**

Then I saw in the right hand of the one seated on the throne a scroll written on the inside and on the back, sealed with seven seals; <sup>2</sup> and I saw a mighty angel proclaiming with a loud voice, ‘Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?’ <sup>3</sup> And no one in heaven or on earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to look into it. <sup>4</sup> And I began to weep bitterly because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to look into it. <sup>5</sup> Then one of the elders said to me, ‘Do not weep. See, **the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered**, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals.’

<sup>6</sup> Then I saw between the throne and the four living creatures and among the elders a Lamb standing as if it had been slaughtered, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth. <sup>7</sup> He went and took the scroll from the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne. <sup>8</sup> When he had taken the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell before the Lamb, each holding a harp and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. <sup>9</sup> They sing a new song:

## *The Lion of Judah*

'You are worthy to take the scroll  
and to open its seals,  
for you were slaughtered and by your blood you ransomed for God  
saints from every tribe and language and people and nation;  
<sup>10</sup> you have made them to be a kingdom and priests serving our God,  
and they will reign on earth.'

<sup>11</sup> Then I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels surrounding the throne and the  
living creatures and the elders; they numbered myriads of myriads and thousands of  
thousands, <sup>12</sup> singing with full voice,

'Worthy is the Lamb that was slaughtered  
to receive power and wealth and wisdom and might  
and honour and glory and blessing!'

<sup>13</sup> Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the  
sea, and all that is in them, singing,

'To the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb  
be blessing and honour and glory and might  
for ever and ever!'

<sup>14</sup> And the four living creatures said, 'Amen!' And the elders fell down and worshipped.

(Revelation 5:1-14)



*Conclusion*  
*The Lion of Judah*



*The Victory Roar of the Lion of Judah*  
*Victory is engraved here on the stone rolled away*

# ***The Lion of Judah***

This book is compiled from the first six books in this series of devotional books about Jesus, the Lion of the tribe of Judah.

This book has examined these themes:

## **1. *The Titles of Jesus***

These titles include Lion of Judah, Jesus/Joshua, Son of Man, Son of God, Son, Father's Son, Son of David, Lord, Lord Jesus, Lord Jesus Christ, Messiah/Christ, Master, King, King of the Jews, King of Israel, Saviour, Saviour of the World, Lamb of God, Rabbi/Teacher, Leader/Prince, Righteous One, Holy One, True One, Faithful and True, The Branch, Root of David, Cornerstone, The Almighty, The Name, Immanuel/Emmanuel, Wonderful Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace, I am, The Bread of life, The living bread, The Light of the world, The Door/Gate, The Good shepherd, The Resurrection, and the life, The way, the truth, the life, The True vine, The Alpha and the Omega, The first and the last, The beginning and the end, The root and the descendant of David, and The bright morning star.

## **2. *The Reign of Jesus***

Jesus said that he fulfilled prophecies about the Messiah, the Gospels all record how Jesus fulfilled prophecy, and the early church declared that Jesus fulfilled prophecy, as recorded in many important passages in the Old Testament.

## **3. *The Life of Jesus***

Jesus' unique life as Emmanuel, God with us, not only shows us what God is like by revealing God to us in the person of his Son, but Jesus also showed us what God's kingdom is like and how to live in the kingdom of God. The characteristics of Jesus' ministry demonstrated kingdom life including prayer, healing, teaching and parables, training and equipping disciples, and increasing opposition,

## **4. *The Death of Jesus***

Central to the story of Jesus is his death combined with the conquering victory of the resurrection and his reign in glory in God's kingdom. By his death he conquered. The Lamb of God became the triumphant Lion of Judah.

## **5.     *The Resurrection of Jesus***

Jesus' resurrection and ascension show God's vindication of Jesus' eternal reign in God's kingdom. The Lion of Judah has conquered. He alone is worthy. He alone opened the mystery and majesty of God's eternal kingdom to us.

## **6.     *The Spirit of Jesus***

The Spirit of Jesus, one with God's Spirit, the Holy Spirit, is given to us in the mystery and majesty of unity in the Trinity. Jesus said, "I am with you to the end of the age." His Spirit, one with the Spirit of the Lord, the Holy Spirit, in within and around us and still involved in renewing all creation.

*These Bible studies on Jesus, the Lion of Judah, illustrate the astounding and eternal victory of Jesus, the Lamb of God and Lion of Judah, the Son of God and Son of Man, the King of kings and Lord of lords.*

*The revelation about Jesus as the Lion of the tribe of Judah is from the last book of the Bible. The last chapter of that book invites us to respond, in Revelation 22:16-17, 20-21:*

'It is I, Jesus, who sent my angel to you with this testimony for the churches. I am the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star.'

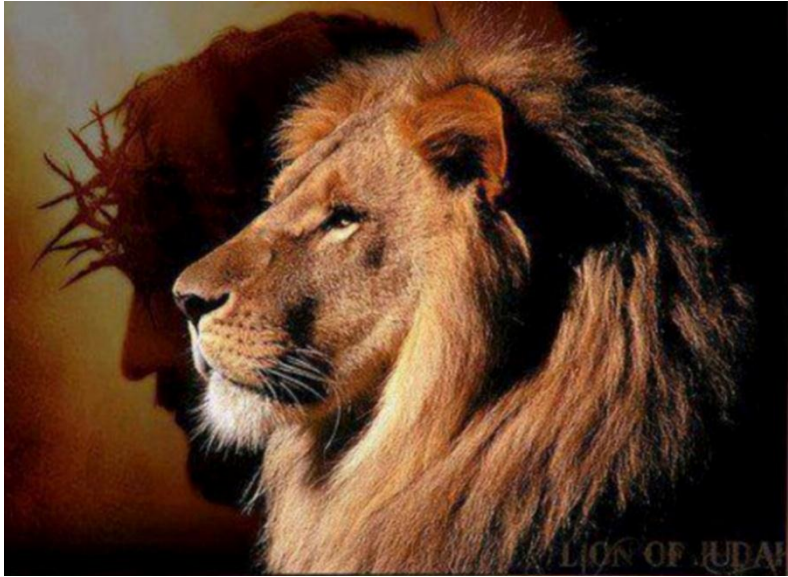
<sup>17</sup> The Spirit and the bride say, 'Come.'  
And let everyone who hears say, 'Come.'  
And let everyone who is thirsty come.  
Let anyone who wishes take the water of life as a gift. ...

<sup>20</sup> The one who testifies to these things says, 'Surely I am coming soon.'

Amen. Come, Lord Jesus!

<sup>21</sup> The grace of the Lord Jesus be with all the saints. Amen.

*The Lion of Judah*



# Appendix 1

## *Aslan – The Lion of Judah*

One of the most popular Lion stories is about Aslan in *The Chronicles of Narnia*, by C. S. Lewis.

The stories of Aslan illustrate in fairy tale the greater story of the Lion of the tribe of Judah hidden within the Narnia stories. Replying to a child's enquiry about the lion's name, Lewis wrote. "I found the name in the notes to Lane's *Arabian Nights*: it is the Turkish for Lion. I pronounce it Ass-lan myself. And of course I meant the Lion of Judah."<sup>8</sup> The Aslan passages echo and reflect the greatest story of all, the story of the Lion of Judah.

Aslan reminded the children that they would know him truly in their own world when they left Narnia: "But there I have another name. You must learn to know me by that name. This was the very reason why you were brought to Narnia, that by knowing me here for a little you may know me better there."<sup>9</sup>

Lewis encouraged readers to make that discovery. He replied to Hila, an 11 year old girl who wrote a letter asking about Aslan's other name: "As to Aslan's other name, well I want you to guess. Has there ever been anyone in *this* world who (1.) Arrived at the same time as Father Christmas. (2) Said he was the son of the Great Emperor. (3) Gave himself up for someone else's fault to be jeered at and killed by wicked people. (4) Came to life again. (5) Is sometimes spoken of as a Lamb (see the end of the Dawn Treader). Don't you really know His name in this world."<sup>10</sup>

Most children did. Many adults did not.

Nine-year-old Laurence worried that he loved Aslan more than Jesus. So his mother wrote to C. S. Lewis, care of the Publishing Company. She received his answer just ten days later. Lewis explained, "Laurence can't *really* love Aslan more than Jesus, even if he feels that's what he is doing. For the things he loves Aslan for doing or saying are simply the things Jesus really did and said. So that when Laurence thinks he is loving Aslan, he is really loving Jesus: and perhaps loving Him more than he ever did before."<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> C. S. Lewis: *Letters to Children*, edited by L W Dorsett and M L Mead, Touchstone, New York: Simon & Schuster, 1995, p. 29.

<sup>9</sup> *The Voyage of the Dawn Treader*, Ch. 16.

<sup>10</sup> *Letters to Children*, p. 32.

<sup>11</sup> *Letters to Children*, pp. 52-53.

## The Lion of Judah

Lewis, replying to a girl, Ruth, wrote, "If you continue to love Jesus, nothing much can go wrong with you, and I hope you may always do so. I'm thankful that you realized [the] "hidden story" in the Narnian books. It is odd, children nearly *always* do, grown-ups hardly ever."<sup>12</sup>

The Chronicles of Narnia can help you know Aslan better in the world of Narnia and to know and love Jesus, the Lion of Judah, better also.

Jesus promised to be with us always. He is with us now, caring for us and helping us, even though we do not see him yet. One day we will see him and really know how great and good he is. Meanwhile we can talk to him in our mind and heart anytime and get to know him better from the Bible, especially through the Gospels.

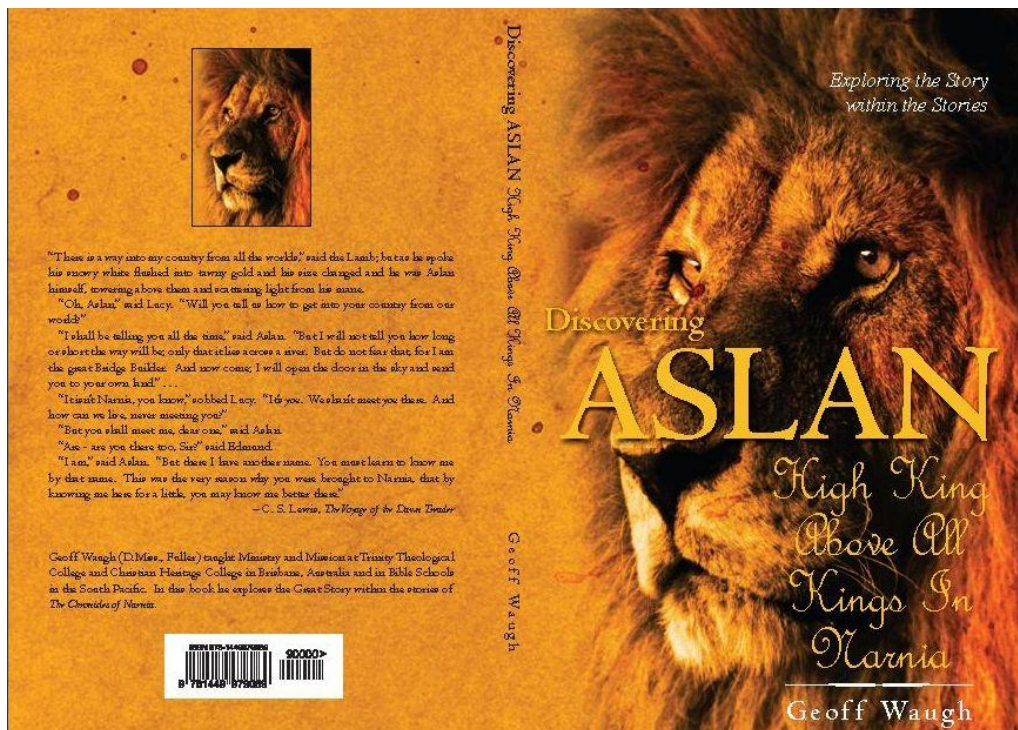
One of his last promises is 'Remember, I am with you always, to the end of the age' (Matthew 28:20).

***This first part (above) of this Appendix is included in Book 1: The Titles of Jesus.***

***This Appendix continues with two more sections:***

**The Prologue in the *Discovering ASLAN* books**

**ASLAN is not a tame lion: Inspiring quotes about JESUS**



<sup>12</sup> *Letters to Children*, p. 111.

## **Prologue in the *Discovering ASLAN* books**

He is the High King above all kings, the King of kings and Lord of lords.

He is the son of the Great Emperor beyond the sea, beyond the world. He spoke and sang before the creation of the world and brought the world into being.

He commands legions of creatures and people in many worlds. Some creatures loyal to him may seem strange to us, and many of them fly. They worship him and serve him wholeheartedly.

His word is always true. You can depend on him totally. He never lies.

He appears unexpectedly and makes things right. He gave his life to conquer evil and ransom the guilty rebel. He rose again by dawn and appeared first to loving, caring young women.

He has enemies in this world and in other worlds but he defeated them and they are doomed. They tremble at the sound of his name.

All who trust in him are forgiven and set free. He breathes life into hearts of stone. His breath gives life.

He reveals himself to those who choose to follow and obey him, and the more they know him the more they love him. The more you know him the bigger he becomes to you. He loves you with unending love.

He chose Peter to lead under his authority and to reign with his royal family. They failed him at times, as we all do, but he always sets things right when anyone asks for his help, trusts him and follows him.

He has all authority in this world and in other worlds. Multitudes love and serve him now and forever. We can talk to him now and always.

He is the subject of this book and many other books. He calls us to respond to him, to believe in him, to love him and to live for him.

He is the Lion of Judah.



**ASLAN is not a tame lion**

**Inspiring Quotes about JESUS**

**Adrian Plass, *The Sacred Diary of Adrian Plass*. Canterbury, 1987, pp. 102-103:**

'He was a nuisance then,' said Braddock, 'and he's a nuisance now. He won't let you work out cosy little systems and call 'em "churches", and he won't let you get away with having four meetings a week to discuss what you're going to do in next week's meetings. If that's what you want, you'll find Jesus a real pain in the neck. He says awkward, difficult things, like "Love your enemies", and "Invite the people who really need it to dinner", and "Love God before anything else". He's terrible like that. They couldn't pin him down then, and you can't pin him down now, but I'll tell you something ... if you want to pay the cost, there's no one else worth following, and nothing else worth doing!'

**Larry Lea in C. Peter Wagner, *Territorial Spirits*. Sovereign World, 1991, p. 84:**

Jesus was controversial. Not just a little. Not just occasionally. He was thoroughly, persistently controversial throughout most of His ministry.

Folks today who think they will follow Jesus, say the things He said, and do the things He did without encountering opposition are in for a rude awakening. Jesus was controversial in His day, and we who express His life and His teachings will be controversial today as well. Jesus even said so. He said to His apostles, 'If they treat the master of the house as if he's the devil, how do you think they'll treat you?'



**John Stott, *Christ the Controversialist*. Tyndale, 1970, p. 49:**

The popular image of Christ as 'gentle Jesus, meek and mild' simply will not do. It is a false image. To be sure, He was full of love, compassion and tenderness. But He was also uninhibited in exposing error and denouncing sin, especially hypocrisy. Christ was a controversialist. The Evangelists portray Him as constantly debating with the leaders of contemporary Judaism.

**Pierre Berton, *The Comfortable Pew*. Hodder & Stoughton, 1965, pp. 90, 94:**

In the beginning, Christianity was anything but a respectable creed. Its founder moved among the outcasts of society – among the prostitutes, racial minorities, political traitors, misfits, vagrants, and thieves; among “the hungry, the naked, the homeless and the prisoner.” He himself was considered a religious heretic and a traitor to his nation, an enemy of the status quo, a man who broke the Sabbath, a dangerous radical, a disturber and a malcontent who fought the establishment and whose constant companions were the sort of people who are to be found in the skid-row areas of the big cities. When he stood trial, there was an element of truth in the charge under which he was found guilty: “He stirs up the people.”

It has been said, with truth (and by a Christian minister), that none of the twelve apostles would feel at home today in a modern church. Nor is it likely that a modern church would welcome the kind of people with whom its founder associated...

**Philip Yancey. 1995. *The Jesus I Never Knew*. Sydney: Strand, pp. 22-23.**

What would it have been like to hang on the edges of the crowd? How would I have responded to this man? Would I have invited him over for dinner like Zacchaeus? Turned away in sadness, like the rich young ruler? Betrayed him, like Judas and Peter?

Jesus, I found, bore little resemblance to the figure I had met in Sunday school, and was remarkably unlike the person I had studied in Bible college. For one thing, he was far less tame. In my prior image, I realized, Jesus' personality matched that of a Star Trek Vulcan: he remained calm, cool, and collected as he strode like a robot among excitable human beings on spaceship earth. That is not what I found portrayed in the Gospels and in the better films. Other people affected Jesus deeply: obstinacy frustrated him, self-righteousness infuriated him, simple faith thrilled him. Indeed, he seemed more emotional and spontaneous than the average person, not less. More passionate, not less.

The more I studied Jesus, the more difficult it became to pigeonhole him. He said little about the Roman occupation, the main topic of conversation among his countrymen, and yet he took up a whip to drive petty profiteers from the Jewish temple. He urged obedience to the Mosaic law while acquiring the reputation as a lawbreaker. He could be stabbed by sympathy for a stranger, yet turn on his best friend with the flinty rebuke, "Get behind me, Satan!" He had uncompromising views on rich men and loose women, yet both types enjoyed his company.

His extravagant claims about himself kept him at the centre of controversy, but when he did something truly miraculous he tended to hush it up. As Walter Wink has said, if Jesus had never lived, we would not have been able to invent him.

Two words one could never think of applying to the Jesus of the Gospels: boring and predictable. How is it, then, that the church has tamed such a character – has, in Dorothy Sayers' words, "very efficiently pared the claws of the Lion of Judah, certified Him as a fitting household pet for pale curates and pious old ladies"?

## **Appendix 2**

### **China Miracle**

*Jesus said, "I will build my church" (Matthew 16:18). This contemporary example of powerful New Testament style church growth is a wonderful account reported by Carl Lawrence.<sup>13</sup>*

#### ***The Spirit told us what to do***

*Two young women set off to plant churches without plans or training because Jesus said to "go".*

***After we prayed, the Holy Spirit would tell us exactly what to do.  
We would keep praying and he would tell us what to do,  
and we would do it.  
Then we prayed and then he would tell us what to do.  
We would do it and keep praying.***

Several high-ranking church leaders from Europe visited a pastor in Hong Kong. The pastor took them to visit some of the Three-Self churches. They found them inspiring, and uniquely Chinese, but they wondered aloud if perhaps they weren't seeing the real church. ...

On the final day of their visit, the pastor hoped to show them what they kept wanting to see. He knew they would not really be satisfied unless they met a real church planter. As it turned out, they saw something incredibly beyond what they ever expected to find in China.

At their last stop, the pastor discovered that two young women had just returned from their mission station for a short visit, so he asked them to come to the hotel late, to meet the visiting church leaders.

These young ladies had both become Christians as teenagers while listening to radio broadcasts, and they each had immediately felt the call to be a missionary. The pastor had met with them and attempted to teach them how to witness right where they were.

"No," they insisted, "the Bible you gave us says Jesus said to go to all the world. We want to 'go.'"

---

<sup>13</sup> Carl Lawrence, 1996, *The Coming Influence of China*, Vision House, pp. 186-192, reproduced in my book, *Body Ministry: The Body of Christ Alive in His Spirit*. See [www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com)

## *The Lion of Judah*

“But,” the pastor argued, “you have only been Christians for six months, and you are so young.”

They replied, “Pastor, we have read everything Jesus said and nowhere does he ask people how old they are. We want to go.”

Smiling, the pastor asked them, “But can you give me an exegesis of the five classical appearances of the Great Commission in the New Testament?” Their disappointed faces made him feel ashamed. “Very well. We need some workers on Hainan Island.”

“Hainan Island, we have never heard of it.”

The pastor said, “It is an island off the mainland. The people there are fishermen. It is very rough. There are no Christians there. For young ladies it might be very dangerous.”

Excitedly they responded, “How soon can we go?”

“Well, I have to go back to Hong Kong and make arrangements. There will be . . .”

They interrupted him, “Oh no, no, we must not wait. Our Lord said ‘go,’ not sit around and plan. We will go to this place - what did you call it?”

“Hainan. Hainan Island.”

They looked at each other, “Hainan, yes Hainan. That is where the Lord wants us to go.”

They had been there for two years and were now back for a short period of time to try to get Bibles and other literature for their new churches. The pastor had not seen them since the day they insisted that they ‘go now’!

After the arrangements were made, he went to the lobby at the appointed time and waited for the ladies to arrive. He watched the bellboys in their crisp, tailored uniforms, and the tourists who attempted to be casual in their designer clothes. Then he spotted the two young women. *Oh no*, he thought as they walked in.

Their black pyjamas and broad-brimmed fishermen hats stood in stark contrast to the appearance of the sophisticated hotel receptionist making her way towards them.

The pastor moved quickly to intercede. “It’s all right, they are here to see me.” Several people stood staring as he greeted them as politely as possible without drawing too much attention. “Come, we will go to my room to meet some people from Europe.”

Once in the room, the two European church officials graciously greeted them. He proceeded to ask the young ladies questions, interpreting for his guests as he went along.

*The Lion of Judah*

"Pastor, ask them how many churches they have established on Hainan."

The women put their heads down and answered, "Oh Pastor, we have only been there two years . . . yes, two years. Not many. Not very many." Their voices were apologetic.

"How many?"

"Oh, not many, not many. We have only been there a short time. The people were not very friendly. . . Sometimes they became very vicious. Yes, sometimes they told us they were going to drown us in the ocean . . . several men threatened us . . . Oh my, and because we were so young, even some of the other ladies did not like us. Yes some even called us terrible names . . . so not many churches . . . no, not many. . ."

The pastor interrupted and slowly repeated the words, "How many? How many?"

There was a moment of silence, then one of the women looked up with embarrassment and anguish, as though confessing to a crime,

"Only . . . thirteen."

The pastor looked astonished and interpreted for the guests, "Thirteen."

One of the guests repeated the number, "Only thirteen, only - my goodness. I haven't planted that many churches in my lifetime."

One of the pastor's assistants interrupted, "No, Pastor, she did not say thirteen. She said thirty."

The pastor looked at the two young women and asked, "Thirty?"

"Oh, yes, not many, we have done very poorly. Only thirty . . ."

The two guests could only mutter, "Thirty churches in two years . . . my word. . ."

Again the women began to apologize when the pastor interrupted to ask another question, "How many people are in the churches?"

"How many? . . . Oh, not many. . . ." Again both heads went down, apologizing for their failure. "Not many."

The process repeated itself until, again, the pastor looked like he was ready to shake them and practically yelled, "How many?"

"Only two hundred and twenty people. Not many, no . . . not many. "

Quickly multiplying in his head, the pastor said, "Two hundred and twenty in thirty churches?"

## *The Lion of Judah*

“Oh, no, in only one, but that one is a very small church, very small. There are bigger ones. . . .”

As the pastor interrupted he heard the numbers repeated by his guests: “Two hundred and twenty is small? Dear Lord, I wish I had some that large.”

“Ask them how many are in the big churches.”

The process began, but with a more reverent inquiry: “And how many in the big churches? You know, the biggest one?”

“Oh, not many . . . .”

“I know, ‘not many.’ But, please, ladies, how many?”

“Oh, less than five thousand. Only four thousand nine hundred . . . . Yes, less than five thousand. We have just started.”

From behind the pastor came the sound of weeping: “Dear Lord, forgive us.”

“What did they do? How did they do it? Ask them what they did?”

When asked, they looked astonished. “What did we do? Why nothing. Yes, we did nothing, nothing.”

“You did nothing? You have thirty churches - the smallest with two hundred and twenty people, the largest with almost five thousand new Christians! And you did nothing?”

“No, nothing. We just prayed.”

“I know you prayed, but what else did you do?”

“After we prayed, the Holy Spirit would tell us exactly what to do. We would keep praying and he would tell us what to do, and we would do it. Then we prayed and then he would tell us what to do. We would do it and keep praying.”

“Dear Lord, they *just* prayed . . . and the Holy Spirit told them exactly what to do and they prayed. . . .”

The pastor laid his hands on the shoulders of the two sisters. Behind him his two guests, on their knees weeping, joined as they ‘just prayed’.

***This Appendix is included in Book 2: the Reign of Jesus***

## **Appendix 3**

### **Resources**

This book compiles the series of six booklets on *The Lion of Judah* into one larger book.

Check with the publisher **www.renewaljournal.com** for information about all these books.

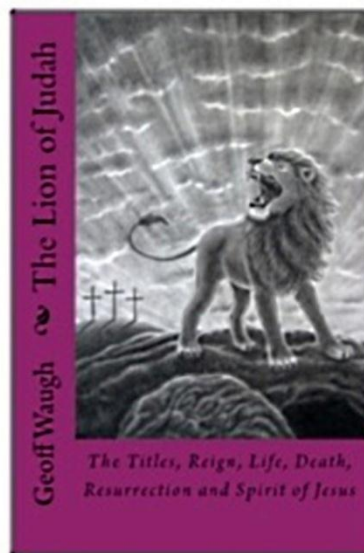
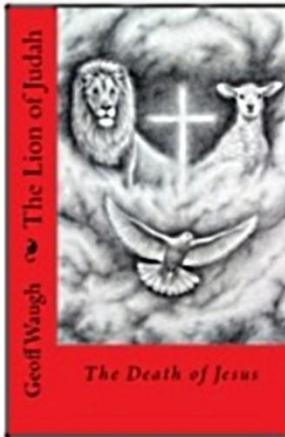
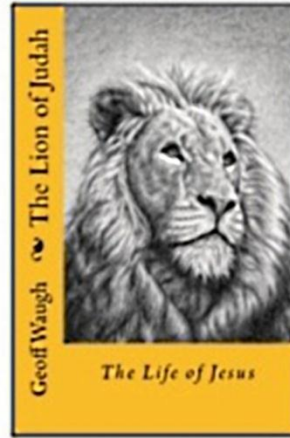
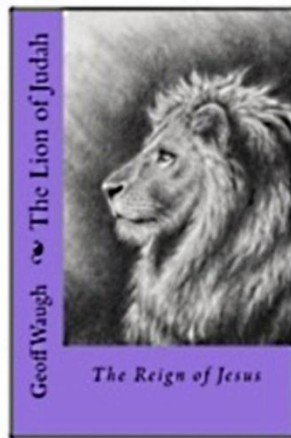
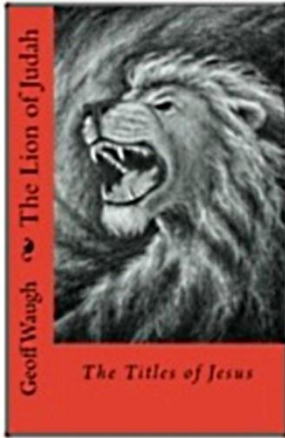
A companion book is *Discovering Aslan: High King above all Kings in Narnia*.

All these books feature art from Australian artist Rebecca Brogan's series, *The Lion of Judah*.

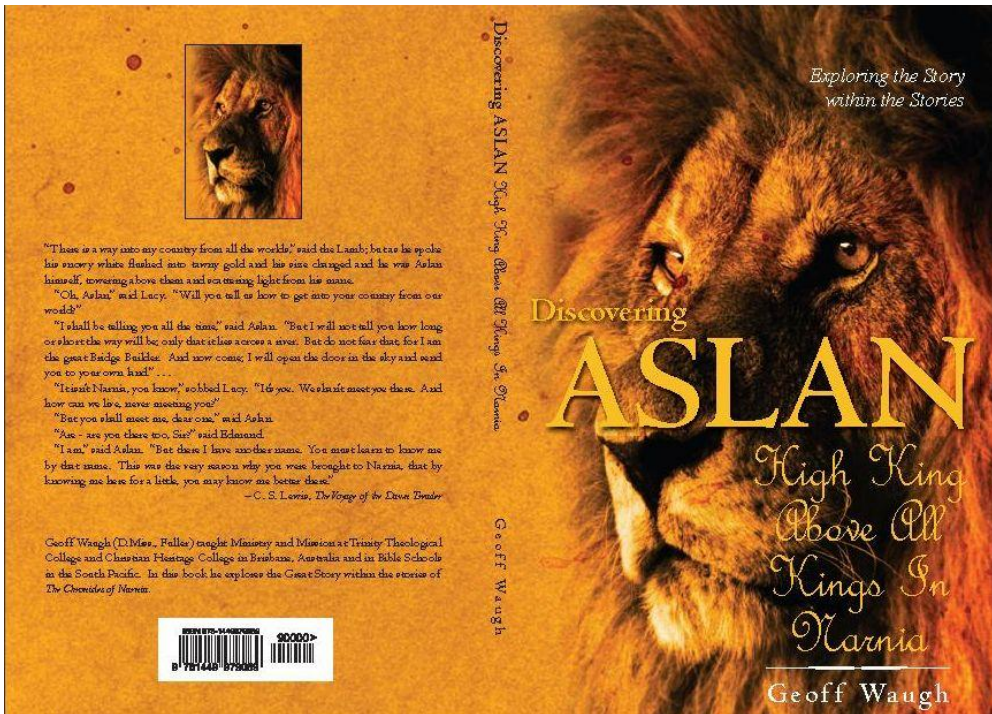
These books use the *New Revised Standard Version* (NRSV), as it is close to the majesty of the Authorised Version, with more current and inclusive language. Some quotes are from the *New King James Version* (NKJV) if the passage is especially well known, and many passages are used from the New International Version (NIV). Occasionally another translations are included if it is particularly appropriate. These include, the King James Version (KJV), the Revised Standard Version (RSV), the New English Bible (NEB) the English Standard Version (ESV), and the Living Bible Translation (LBT) and J B Phillips translation of the New Testament (JBT).

Other Renewal Journal publications are available with Blogs through **www.renewaljournal.com**, and at 'Geoff Waugh' on Amazon and Kindle and with free airmail postage worldwide from The Book Depository.

**The Lion of Judah Series – in colour**







***Discovering Aslan:  
High King above all Kings in Narnia  
A commentary of Jesus, the Lion of Judah***

***Introduction***

***1. The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe***

*Aslan is on the move*

***2. Prince Caspian***

*Each year that you grow you will find me bigger*

***3. The Voyage of the Dawn Treader***

*By knowing me here for a little, you may know me better there*

***4. The Silver Chair***

*Aslan's instructions always work: there are no exceptions*

***5. The Horse and His Boy***

*High King above all kings in Narnia*

***6. The Magician's Nephew***

*I give you yourselves ... and I give you myself*

***7. The Last Battle***


*Further up and further in*


***Conclusion***

❧

The Christmas Message

Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II, in the first of her annual Christmas Speeches (1952), reminded us that "Peace on earth, Goodwill toward men" is the eternal message of Christmas, and the desire of us all. The Queen's Christmas Messages describe the significance of Christmas as well as giving us her compassionate review of the year. This book compiles in one volume her Majesty's reflections on the significance of Christmas.


 *The Rev Dr Geoff Waugh is the founding editor of the Renewal Journal and author of books on ministry and mission. He taught Anglican, Catholic and Uniting Church students in Trinity Theological College and the School of Theology of Griffith University as well as at Christian Heritage College in Brisbane, Australia. He taught in schools and Bible Colleges in Papua New Guinea and in the South Pacific and led short term missions in Africa, Europe, Asia and in the South Pacific islands.*

 **Barcode Area**  
We will add the barcode for you.  
Made with Cover Creator

The Christmas Message

❧

Edited by  
Geoff Waugh

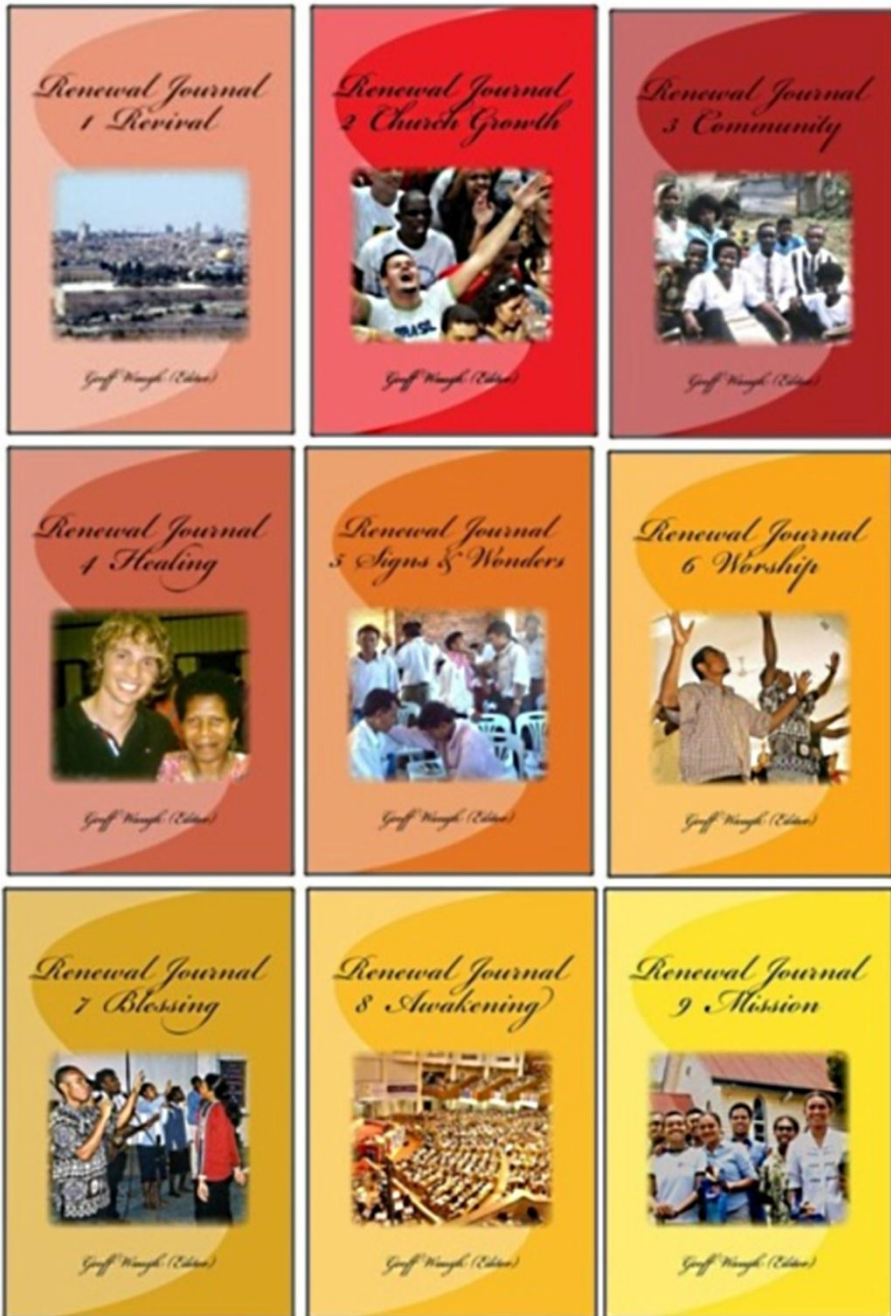


*Reflections on the Significance of Christmas  
from the Queen's Christmas Messages*

***The Christmas Message:  
Reflections on the Significance of Christmas  
from the Queen's Christmas Messages***

Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II, in the first of her annual Christmas Speeches (1952), reminded us that "Peace on earth, Goodwill toward men" is the eternal message of Christmas, and the desire of us all. The Queen's Christmas Messages describe the significance of Christmas as well as giving us her compassionate review of the year. This book compiles in one volume her Majesty's reflections on the significance of Christmas.

## Renewal Journals

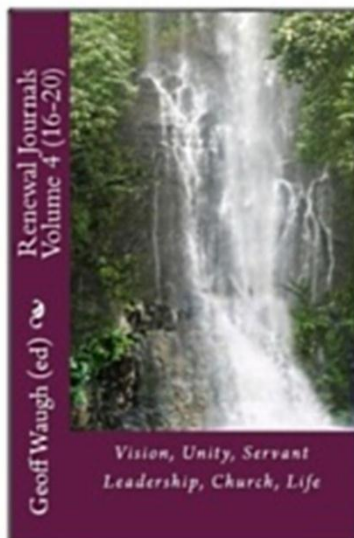
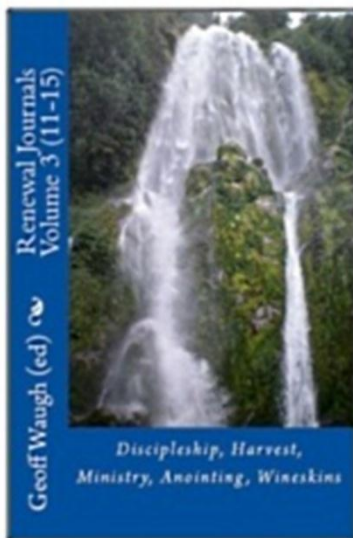
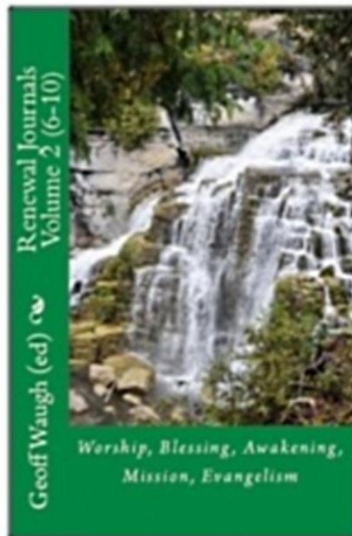
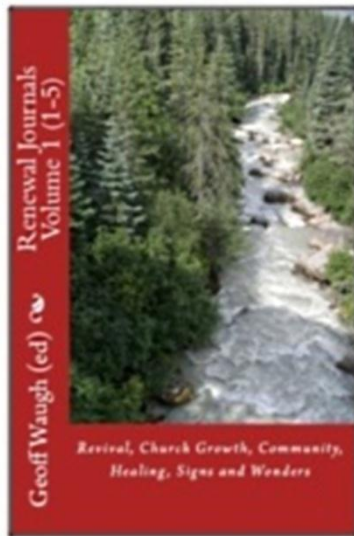
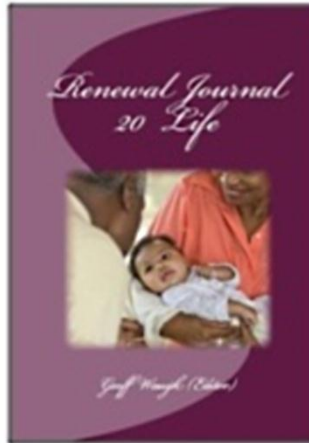
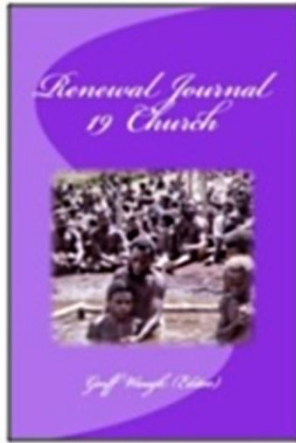


[www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com)

The Lion of Judah



<http://www.renewaljournal.com>



## **Renewal Journal Publications**

[www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com)

### **Revival Books**

*Flashpoints of Revival*

*Revival Fires*

*Great Revival Stories*, comprising  
*Best Revival Stories*  
*Transforming Revivals*

*Renewal and Revival*, comprising  
*Renewal*  
*Revival*

*South Pacific Revivals*

*Anointed for Revival*

### **Renewal Books**

*Looking to Jesus: Journey into Renewal & Revival*

*Light on the Mountains*

*Body Ministry*, comprising  
*The Body of Christ, Part 1: Body Ministry*  
*The Body of Christ, Part 2: Ministry Education*

*Learning Together in Ministry*

*Church on Fire*

*Keeping Faith Alive Today*

*Word and Spirit*

*Living in the Spirit*

*Your Spiritual Gifts*

*Fruit & Gifts of the Spirit*

*The Leader's Goldmine*

*Signs and Wonders*

*Jesus the Model for Short Term Supernatural Mission*

## **Devotional Books**

### **Inspiration**

#### **Jesus on Dying Regrets**

**Kingdom Life series**

**Kingdom Life in Matthew**

**Kingdom Life in Mark**

**Kingdom Life in Luke**

**Kingdom Life in John**

#### **A Preface to the Acts of the Apostles**

### **The Lion of Judah series**

***The Titles of Jesus***

***The Reign of Jesus***

***The Life of Jesus***

***The Death of Jesus***

***The Resurrection of Jesus***

***The Spirit of Jesus***

***The Lion of Judah***

### **Discovering Aslan**

### **The Christmas Message**

## **General Books**

### **You Can Publish for Free**

### **Exploring Israel**

**King of the Granny Flat**, by Dante Waugh

**My First Stories**, by Ethan Waugh

**By All Means**, by Elaine Olley

**An Incredible Journey by Faith**, by Elisha Chowtapilli

**Travelling with Geoff**, by Don Hill

## **Renewal Journals**

**Vol. 1 (1-5)** Revival, Church Growth, Community, Signs & Wonders

**Vol. 2 (6-10)** Worship, Blessing, Awakening, Mission, Evangelism

**Vol. 3 (11-15)** Discipleship, Harvest, Ministry, Anointing, Wineskins

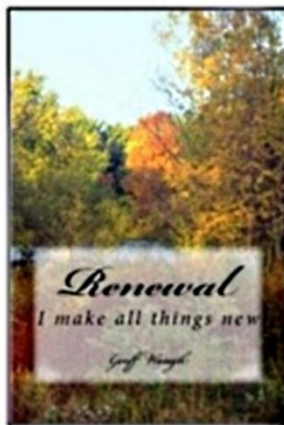
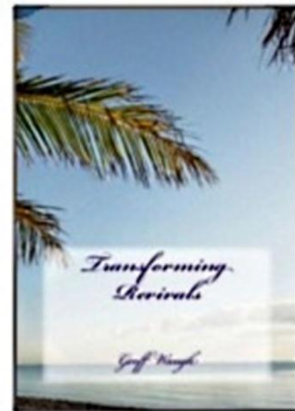
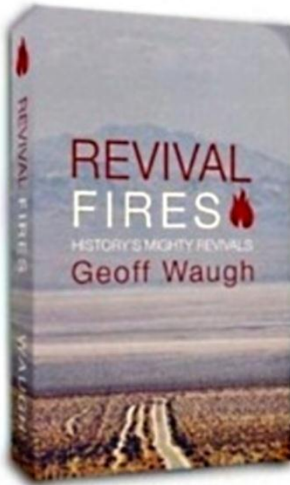
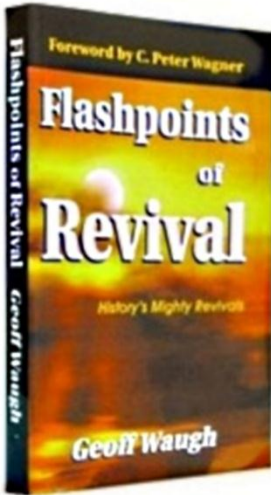
**Vol. 4 (16-20)** Vision, Unity, Servant Leadership, Church, Life

**Amazon and Kindle - Look inside**

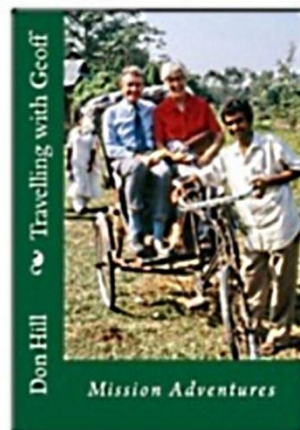
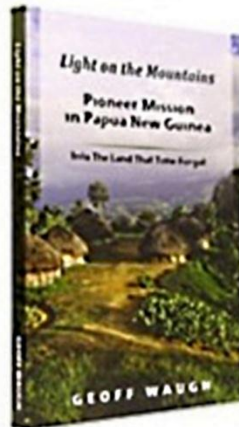
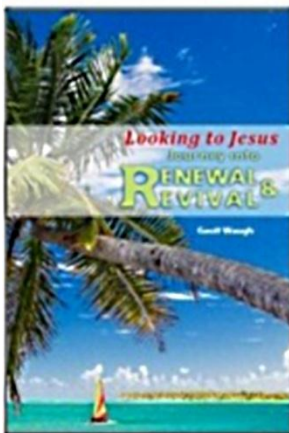
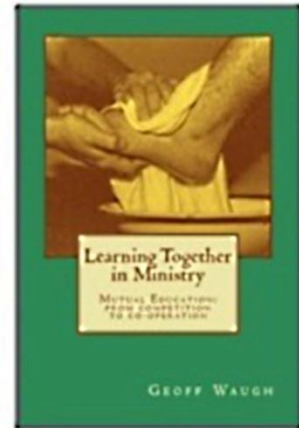
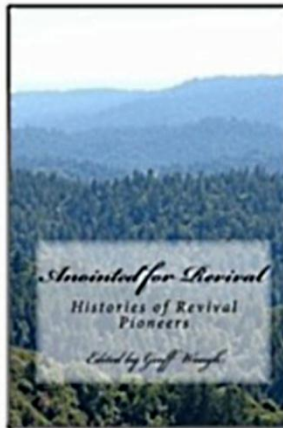
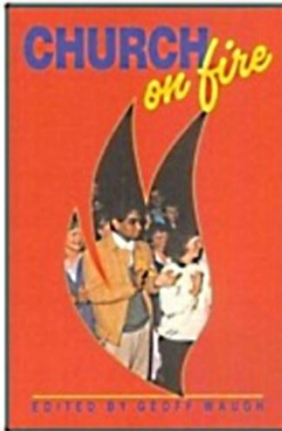
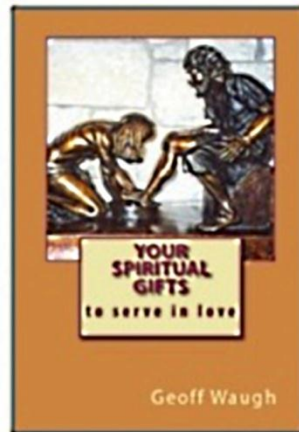
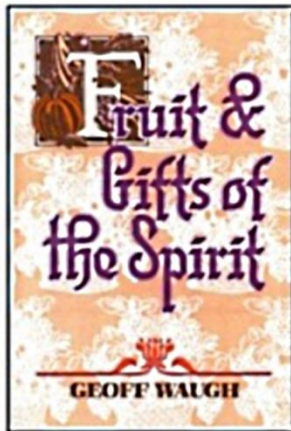
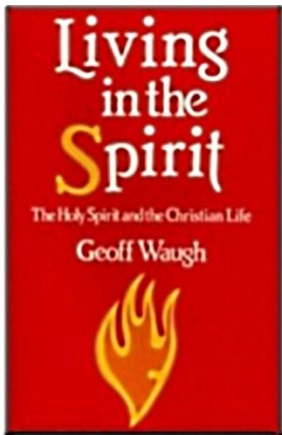
**The Book Depository - Free airmail worldwide**

**Blogs - [www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com)**

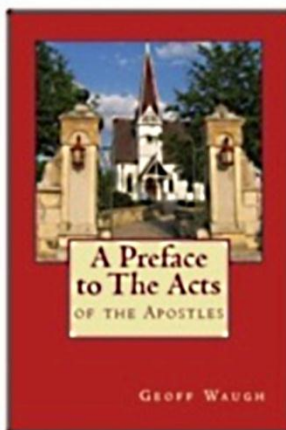
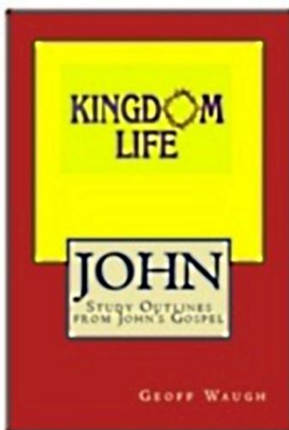
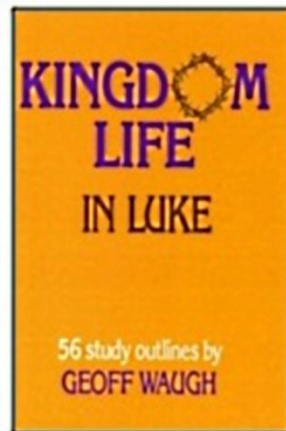
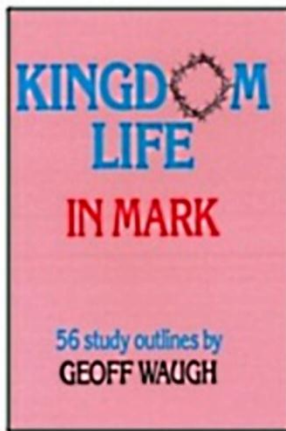
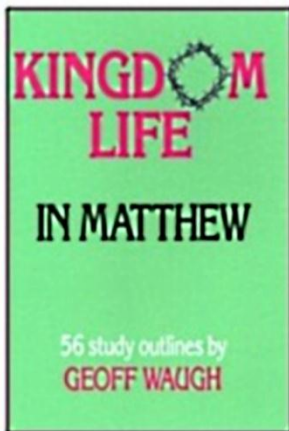
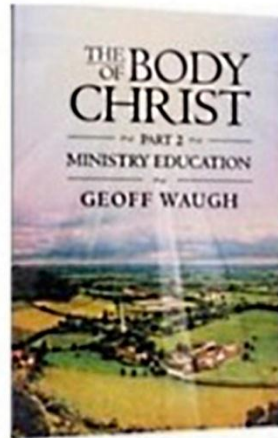
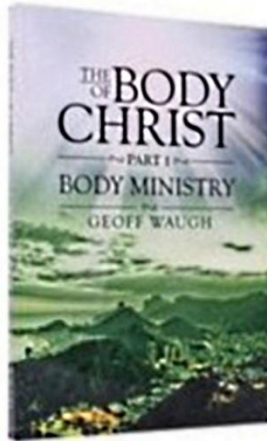
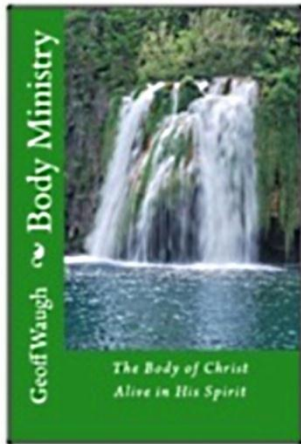
## Renewal Journal Publications











**See**

**[www.renewaljournal.com](http://www.renewaljournal.com)**

**for details on all the**

**Books and Journals**

**We need and value your positive comments**

**or reviews on Amazon and Kindle**

**and The Book Depository**

**to inform and bless others**

**Type 'Lion of Judah'**

**to find the books on Amazon, Kindle**

**and The Book Depository**